



07/09/12 09:10:57 32SAA650\_001



---

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle, and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This Owner's Manual covers all models of the Jazz. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.





## Introduction


Congratulations! Your selection of a Honda Jazz was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several other booklets explain the warranties that protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the schedules given in this manual or the separate service information booklet helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

Best wishes and happy motoring.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

(On German type)

1. Mounting the front licence plate:  
Mount the front licence plate to the provided holder taking care that the upper edge of the licence plate does not project above the upper surface of the bumper.
2. Mounting the rear licence plate:  
Mount the rear licence plate to the back of the vehicle so that its lower edge is flush with the lower end of the surface provided for mounting.





## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**.  
These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

**You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

 **WARNING**

**You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

 **CAUTION**

**You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.**

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.





## Contents

Turn to the beginning of each section for a complete list of subjects.

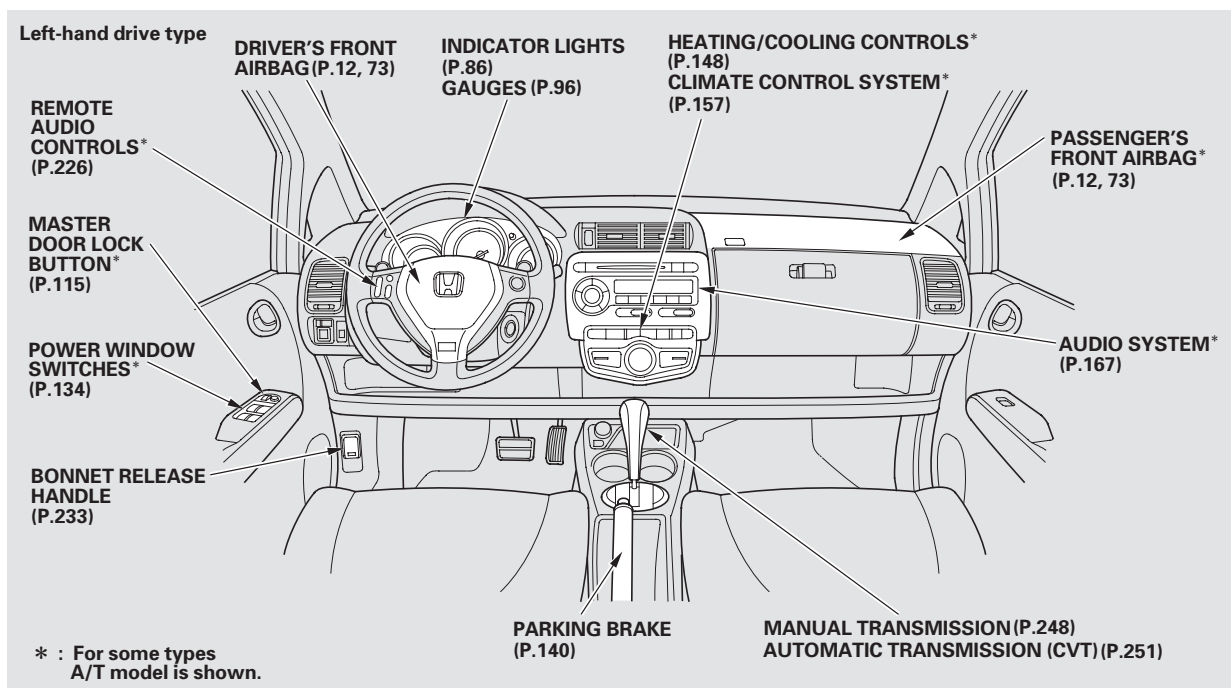
<b>Your Vehicle at a Glance..... 2</b>	<b>Before Driving ..... 229</b> What petrol to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.	<b>Appearance Care ..... 345</b> Tips on cleaning and protecting your vehicle.
<b>Driver and Passenger Safety..... 7</b> Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.	<b>Driving ..... 245</b> The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you're planning to tow a trailer.	<b>Taking Care of the Unexpected ..... 353</b> This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.
<b>Instruments and Controls ..... 83</b> Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.	<b>Maintenance ..... 277</b> The maintenance schedule shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.	<b>Technical Information..... 385</b> ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.
<b>Comfort and Convenience Features ..... 147</b> How to operate the heating and air conditioning system/climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.		<b>Index ..... 397</b>





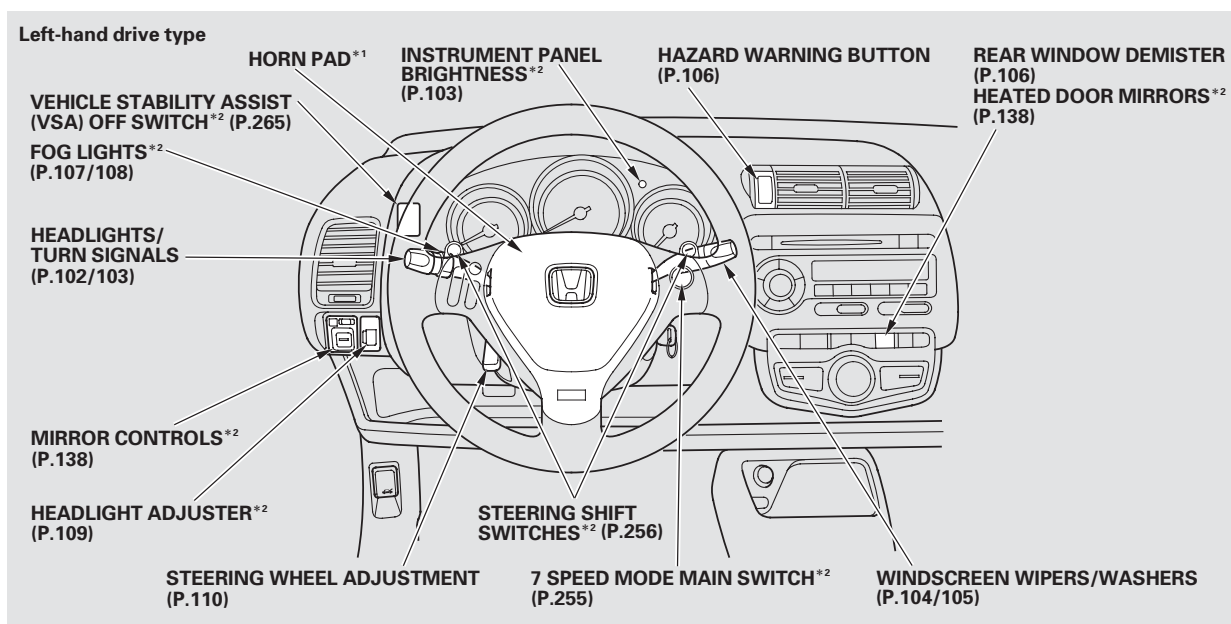


## Your Vehicle at a Glance





## Your Vehicle at a Glance



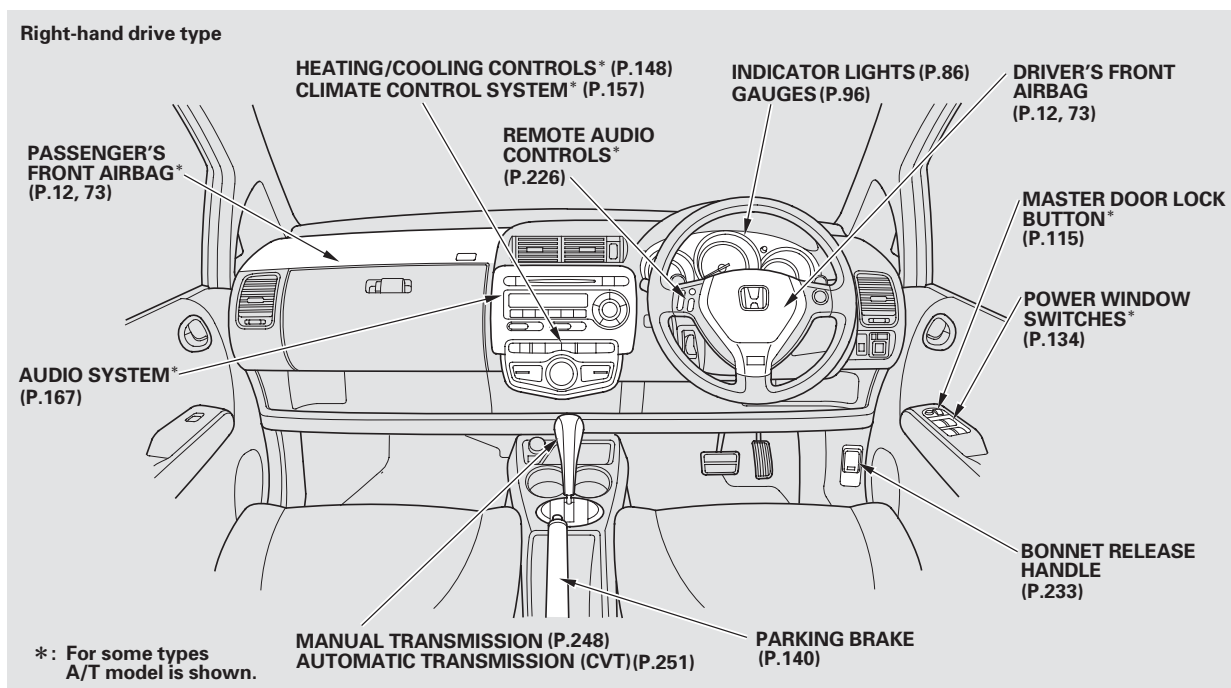
\* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

\* 2 : For some types



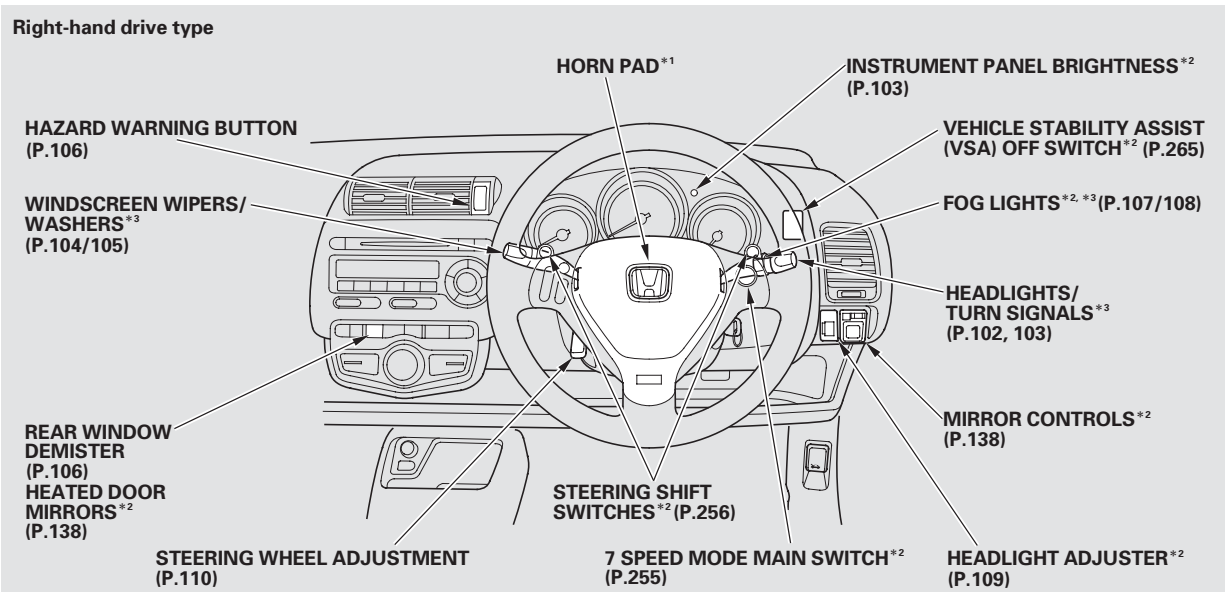


## Your Vehicle at a Glance





## Your Vehicle at a Glance



- \* 1 : To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.
- \* 2 : For some types
- \* 3 : On European models, these switches change locations with each other.







## Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts properly. It explains your Supplemental Restraint System. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions .....	8	6. Adjust the Steering Wheel .....	20	Protecting Larger Children .....	55
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	9	7. Maintain a Proper Sitting		Using Child Restraints with	
Seat Belts .....	10	Position .....	21	Tethers.....	60
Airbags.....	12	Advice for Pregnant Women.....	22	Using the Lower Anchorages ....	62
Seats & Seat-Backs.....	13	Additional Safety Precautions....	22	Additional Information About Your	
Head Restraints .....	14	Protecting Children .....	24	Seat Belts.....	66
Pre-Drive Safety Checklist .....	14	All Children Must Be		Seat Belt System Components...	66
Protecting Adults.....	15	Restrained .....	25	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator.....	66
1. Close the Doors .....	15	Children Should Sit in the Back		Lap/Shoulder Belt.....	67
2. Adjust the Front Seats .....	15	Seat .....	25	Lap Belt.....	68
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs .....	16	The Passenger's Front Airbag		Automatic Seat Belt	
4. Adjust the Head Restraints ....	17	Poses Serious Risks to		Tensioners.....	69
5. Fasten and Position the Seat		Children .....	26	Seat Belt Maintenance .....	70
Belts .....	18	The Side Airbag Poses Serious		Additional Information About	
		Risks to Children .....	29	Your Airbags .....	73
		If You Must Drive with Several		SRS Components .....	73
		Children .....	30	How Your Front Airbags	
		If a Child Requires Close		Work.....	73
		Attention .....	30	How Your Side Airbags	
		Additional Safety Precautions....	30	Work.....	75
		General Guidelines for Using		How the SRS Indicator Works...	76
		Child Restraint Systems .....	31	Airbag Service.....	77
		Child Restraint System for EU		Additional Safety Precautions....	78
		Countries .....	37	Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	79
		Protecting Infants.....	39	Safety Labels .....	80
		Protecting Small Children .....	47		





## Important Safety Precautions

---

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

### **Always Wear Your Seat Belt**

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags (on some types) supplement seat belts, but front airbags are designed to inflate only in a moderate to severe frontal collision. Side airbags (on some types) are designed to inflate only in a moderate to severe side impact. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly. (See page 18.)

### **Restrain All Children**

Children are safest when they are properly restrained in the back seat, not the front seat. A child who is too

small for a seat belt must be properly restrained in a child restraint system (see page 24).

### **Be Aware of Airbag Hazards**

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual (see page 12).

### **Don't Drink and Drive**

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### **Control Your Speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed the greater the risk, but serious accidents can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

### **Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition**

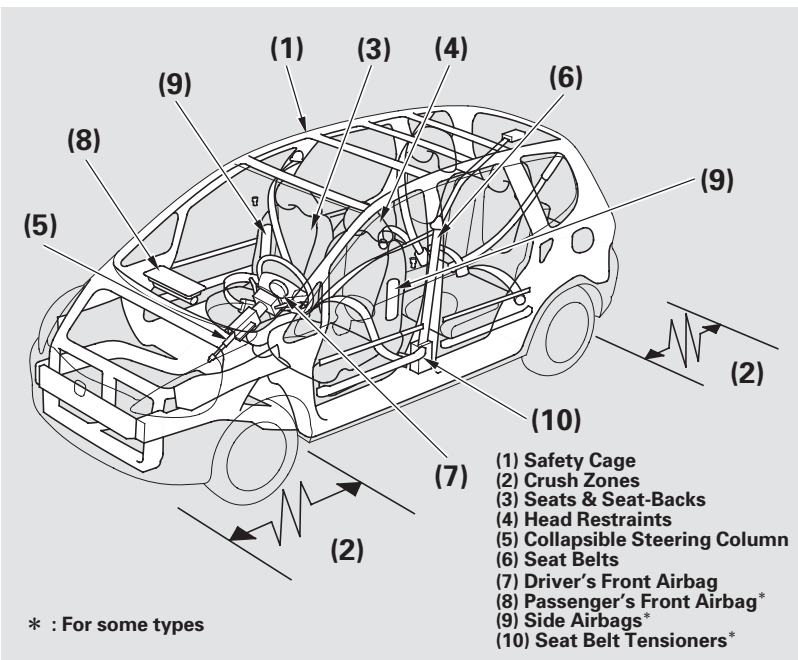
Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 278), and for EU countries, see the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle).

## **8 Driver and Passenger Safety**





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some safety features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment; front and rear crush zones that are designed to crumple and absorb energy during a crash; a collapsible steering column; and seat belt tensioners (on some types) that automatically tighten the front seat belts in the event of a crash.

CONTINUED







## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

These safety features are designed to reduce the severity of injuries in a crash. However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these safety features unless you remain sitting in a proper position and ***always wear your seat belts properly***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

### Seat Belts

For your safety, and the safety of your passengers, your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.



Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

### Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child restraint systems.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In most European Countries there is a law covering the use of seat belts. Please take time to familiarize yourself with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even if you have airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including frontal, side, and rear impacts and rollovers.
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

***What you should do:*** Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

### **WARNING:**

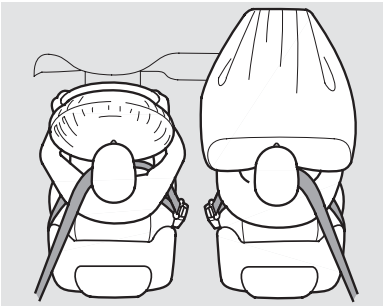
- *Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*
- *Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*
- *Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*
- *Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.*



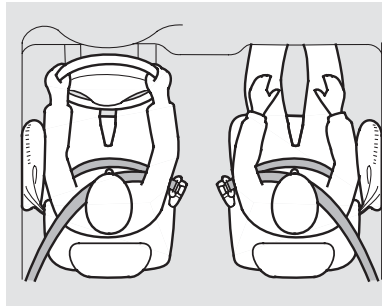


## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

### Airbags (For some types)



Your vehicle has a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and front seat passengers during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 73 for more information on how your front airbags work).



*Only on models equipped with side airbags*

Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 75 for more information on how your side airbags work).

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- **Airbags do not replace seat belts.** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- **Front airbags offer no protection in side impacts, rear impacts, rollovers, or minor frontal collisions.**
- **Side airbags offer no protection in frontal collisions, rear impacts, rollovers, or minor side impacts.**





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

- **Airbags can pose serious hazards.** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force and speed. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries, or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel or dashboard.

### Seats & Seat-Backs

Your vehicle's seats are designed to keep you in a comfortable, upright position so you can take full advantage of the protection offered by seat belts and the energy absorbing materials in the seats.

How you adjust your seats and seat-backs can also affect your safety. For example, sitting too close to the steering wheel or dashboard increases the risk of you or your passenger being injured by striking the inside of the vehicle, or by an inflating airbag.

Reclining a seat-back too far reduces the seat belt's effectiveness and increases the chance that the seat's occupant will slide under the seat belt in a crash and be seriously injured.

**What you should do:** Move the front seats as far back as possible, and keep adjustable seat-backs in an upright position whenever the vehicle is moving.





## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

---

### Head Restraints

Head restraints can help protect you from whiplash and other injuries. For maximum protection, the back of your head should rest against the centre of the head restraint.

### Pre-Drive Safety Checklist

To make sure you and your passengers get the maximum protection from your vehicle's safety features, check the following each time before you drive away:

- All adults, and children who have outgrown child restraint systems, are wearing their seat belts and wearing them properly (see page 18).
- Any infant or small child is properly restrained in a child restraint system in the back seat (see page 24).
- Front seat occupants are sitting upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel and dashboard (see page 15).
- Seat-backs are upright (see page 16).

- Head restraints are properly adjusted (see page 17).
- All doors and the tailgate are closed (see page 15).
- All luggage is properly stored or secured (see page 241).

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in severe crashes, even when seat belts are properly worn and the front airbags (on some types) and side airbags (on some types) deploy.

## 14 Driver and Passenger Safety





## Protecting Adults

### Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver and other adult occupants.

These instructions also apply to children who have outgrown child restraint systems and are large enough to wear lap/shoulder belts (see page 55 for important additional guidelines on how to properly protect larger children).

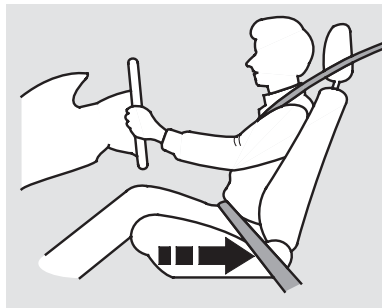
### 1. Close the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and tailgate are closed.



Your vehicle has a door and tailgate monitor indicator on the instrument panel to indicate when any door or the tailgate is not tightly closed.

### 2. Adjust the Front Seats



Any driver who sits too close to the steering wheel is at risk of being seriously injured or killed by striking the steering wheel or from being struck by an inflating front airbag during a crash.

To reduce the chance of injury, wear your seat belt properly, sit upright with your back against the seat, and move the seat away from the steering wheel to the farthest distance that allows you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

Also make sure your passenger moves the seat as far to the rear as possible.

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Adults

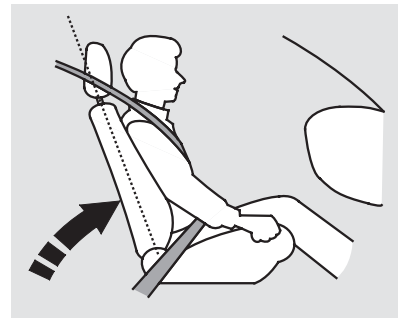
### **⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.**

### **3. Adjust the Seat-Backs**

Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel. If you sit too close to the steering wheel, you could be injured if the front airbag inflates.



Most shorter drivers can get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the pedals. However, if you are concerned about sitting too close, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Once your seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure the seat is locked in position.

See page 124 for how to adjust the front seats.

A front passenger should also adjust the seat-back to an upright position, but as far from the dashboard as possible. On vehicles with a passenger's airbag, a passenger who sits too close to the dashboard could be injured if the airbag inflates.





## Protecting Adults

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

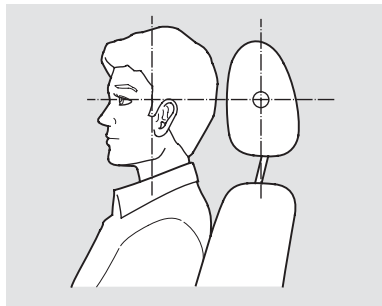
### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position and sit well back in the seat.**

See page 125 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

### 4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Before driving, make sure everyone with an adjustable head restraint has properly positioned the head restraint. The restraint should be positioned so the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. A taller person should adjust the restraint as high as possible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.**

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 125 for how to adjust the head restraints.







## Protecting Adults

### 5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

#### *Using a Lap/Shoulder Belt*

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

In the rear centre seating position, be sure the detachable anchor is latched securely (see page 131).



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

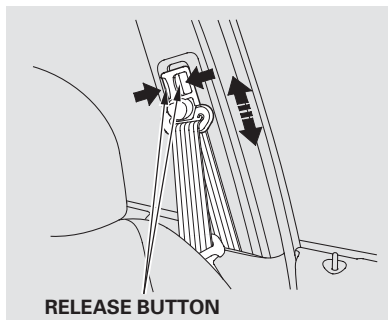
**Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**





## Protecting Adults

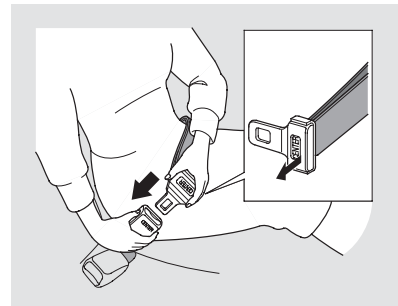


If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.

To adjust the height of a front seat belt anchor, squeeze the two release buttons and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

**Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.** This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

### *Using the Lap Belt (For some types)*



Insert the latch plate into the buckle marked CENTER.

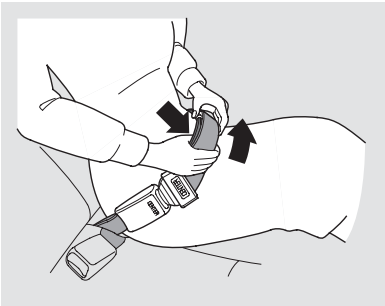
If the belt is too short, hold the latch plate at a right angle and pull on the plate to extend the belt. Then insert the latch plate into the buckle, and tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched.

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Adults



Position the belt as low as possible across your hips. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

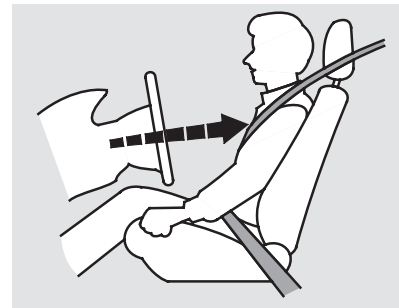
Pull on the loose end of the belt for a snug but comfortable fit.

### ***If a Seat Belt Doesn't Work Properly***

If a seat belt does not seem to work as it should, it may not protect the occupant in a crash. ***No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt.*** Anyone using a seat belt that is not working properly can be seriously injured or killed. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 66 for additional information about your seat belt system and how to take care of your belts.

### **6. Adjust the Steering Wheel**



Adjust the steering wheel, if needed, so that the wheel points toward your chest, not toward your face.

Pointing the steering wheel toward your chest provides optimal protection from the airbag.

See page 110 for how to adjust the steering wheel.





## Protecting Adults

### 7. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

#### *On vehicles with a passenger's front airbag and side airbag*

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured by striking interior parts of the vehicle, or by being struck by an inflating front airbag. Being struck by an inflating side airbag can result in possibly serious injuries.

#### *On vehicles with passenger's side airbag*

If a front passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the passenger with enough force to very seriously injure him.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**

Remember, to get the best protection from your vehicle's airbags and other safety features, you must sit properly and wear your seat belt properly.





## Protecting Adults

### Advice for Pregnant Women



Because protecting the mother is the best way to protect her unborn child, a pregnant woman should always wear a seat belt whenever she drives or rides in a vehicle.

We recommend that pregnant women use a lap/shoulder belt whenever possible. Remember to keep the lap portion of the belt as low as possible across your hips.

Pregnant women should also sit upright and as far back as possible from the steering wheel or dashboard. This will reduce the risk of injuries to both the mother and her unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating airbag.

Each time you have a check-up, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never let passengers ride in the luggage area or on top of a folded-down back seat.*** All passengers must sit in locked, upright seats and be properly restrained by seat belts.
- ***Passengers should not stand up or change seats while the vehicle is moving.*** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.





## Protecting Adults

- **Two people should never use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Do not put any accessories on seat belts.** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can severely compromise the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp objects in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- **Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG" in the centre of the steering wheel and on top of the dashboard (on some types), could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags. Or, if the airbags inflate, the objects could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- **On models with side airbags, do not attach hard objects on or near a front door.** If a side airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- **Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.** If your hands or arms are close to the SRS covers in the centre of the steering wheel and on top of the dashboard (on some types), they could be injured if the front airbags inflate.





## Protecting Children



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many parents and other adults may not know how to *properly* protect young passengers.

So if you have children, or if you ever need to drive with a grandchild or other children in your vehicle, be sure to read this section.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.**

**Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.**

In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation.

In many countries, the law requires children younger than 12 years of age and less than 150 cm (60 in) in height to be secured in an officially approved and suitable child restraint system. In those countries, officially approved and suitable child restraint systems must therefore be used in order to transport a child on any passenger seat whatsoever. Please check your local legal requirements.





## Protecting Children

### All Children Must Be Restrained

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should always be properly restrained whenever they ride in a vehicle.

***Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child restraint system (see page 31).***

***A larger child should always be restrained with a seat belt, and use a booster, if needed (see pages 55 and 57).***

### Additional Precautions to Parents

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward into the dashboard and crush the child.

If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms during a crash. For example, if your vehicle crashes into a parked vehicle at 48 km/h (30 mph), a 9 kg (20-lb) infant will become a 275 kg (600-lb) force, and you will not be able to hold on.

- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and an infant or child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause very serious injuries.

### Children Should Sit in the Back Seat

According to crash statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are properly restrained in the back seat, not the front seat.

In the back seat, children are less likely to be injured by striking hard interior parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating airbag when they ride in the back.







## Protecting Children

### The Passenger's Front Airbag Poses Serious Risks to Children (For some types)

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it inflates with tremendous speed.

#### Infants

*Never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag.* If the front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child restraint system with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

<b>▲ WARNING</b>

<b>Extreme Hazard!</b>
<b>Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!</b>

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to the infant.





## Protecting Children

### ***Small Children***

***Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

### ***Larger Children***

***Children who have outgrown child restraint systems are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag.*** Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, in a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 55 for important information about protecting larger children).

In all cases observe the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

---

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in the back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the windscreen and on the front passenger's doorjamb. On some types, they are also on the sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;





## Protecting Children

### **The Side Airbag Poses Serious Risks to Children (For some types)**

Side airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe side impact.

If any part of a child's body is in the path of a deploying airbag, an inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child.

To remind you of the side airbags hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in the back seat, your vehicle has the safety label on each front doorjamb.

### **⚠ WARNING**



**Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.**

**Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.**





## Protecting Children

---

### If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has three seating positions in the back seat where children can be properly restrained.

If you ever have to carry more than three children in your vehicle:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear a seat belt properly (see page 55).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 15).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 21).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 18).

### If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards from the passenger's front airbag (on some types) and side airbag (on some types), and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- **Use childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the doors.** Using this feature will prevent children from opening the doors and accidentally falling out (see page 121).
- **WARNING: Use the main power window switch to prevent children from opening the windows.** Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver (see page 134).





## Protecting Children

- **Do not leave children alone in your vehicle.** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in some countries and can be very hazardous. For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. And children left alone with the key in the ignition can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- **Lock all doors and the tailgate when your vehicle is not in use.** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside the vehicle and be seriously injured or could die. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles.

- **Keep vehicle keys and remote transmitters (on some types) out of the reach of children.** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition, and open the tailgate, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

### General Guidelines for Using Child Restraint Systems

The following pages give general guidelines for selecting and installing child restraint systems for infants and small children.

#### **Selecting a Child Restraint System**

To provide proper protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements:

CONTINUED





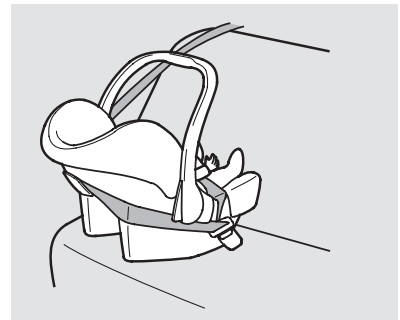
## Protecting Children

**1. The child restraint system should meet safety standards.** In most countries, child restraint systems must meet the specifications of the ECE 44 regulation. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the boxes.

The manufacturer of the vehicle does not assume any responsibility for damage which would be caused by a defect inherent in the recommended child restraint system.

**2. The child restraint system should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.**

Make sure the restraint system fits your child. Check the manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits.



**Infants:** Children up to about one year old should be restrained in a rearward facing, reclining child restraint system. Only a rearward facing child restraint system provides the proper support to protect an infant's head, neck, and back. See page 39 for additional information on protecting infants.





## Protecting Children



**Small Children:** A child who is too large for a rearward facing child restraint system, and who can sit up without support, should be restrained in a front facing child restraint system. See page 47 for additional information on protecting small children.

### ***3. The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats, and seat belts, not all child restraint systems will fit all vehicle seating positions.

However, Honda is confident that one or more child restraint system model can fit and be properly installed in all recommended seating positions in your vehicle.

Before purchasing a child restraint system, we recommend that parents test the child restraint system in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where they intend to use the restraint system. If a previously purchased child restraint system does not fit, you may need to buy a different one that will fit.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the recommended child restraint system.

*For some types*  
Your vehicle has lower anchorages installed for use with Child Restraint Anchorages System-compatible child restraint systems. For more information, see page 62 .

CONTINUED







## Protecting Children

### **Placing a Child Restraint System**

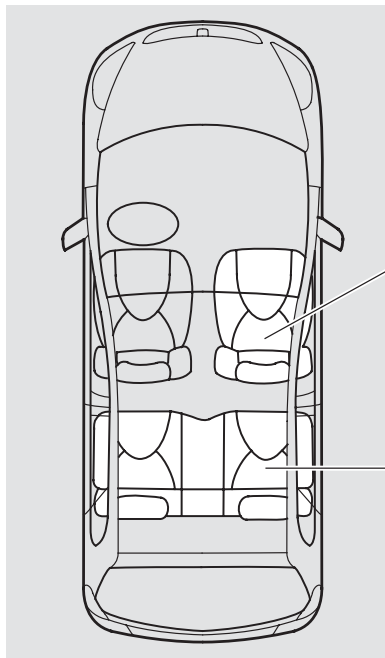
This page briefly summarizes Honda's recommendations on where to place rearward and front facing child restraint systems in your vehicle.

#### **Airbags Pose Serious Risks to Children (For some types)**

The passenger's front airbag inflates with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant in a rearward facing child restraint system.

A small child in a front facing child restraint system is also at risk. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can kill or seriously injure the child.

If a small child must ride in the front, follow the instructions provided in this section.



### **Front Passenger's Seat**

**Infants:** Never in the front seat, due to the front airbag hazard.

**Small children:** Not recommended, due to the front airbag hazard. If a small child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position and secure a front facing child restraint system with the seat belt (see page 47).

### **Back Seats**

**Infants:** Recommended positions.

Properly secure a rearward facing child restraint system (see pages 39 and 62).

**Small children:** Recommended positions. Properly secure a front facing child restraint system (see pages 47 and 62).

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for placing a child restraint system.





## Protecting Children

***Installing a Child Restraint System***  
After selecting a proper child restraint system, and a good position to install the restraint system, there are three main steps in installing the restraint system:

***1. Properly secure the child restraint system to the vehicle.*** All child restraint systems are designed to be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. On some models, some child restraint systems can be secured to the vehicle's lower anchorages instead. Follow the system manufacturer's instructions. A restraint system which is not properly secured to the vehicle can endanger the life of the child, and other occupants in a crash.

See pages 41 and 48 for instructions on how to secure child restraint systems in this vehicle.

*For some types*  
See page 62 for instructions on how to properly secure child restraint systems with lower anchorages in this vehicle.

If you use a lap/shoulder belt without an additional lockable retractor, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 53).



CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

---

**2. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured.** After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

To provide security during normal driving manoeuvres as well as during a collision, we recommend that parents secure a child restraint system as firmly as possible.

However, a child restraint system does not need to be “rock solid.” In some vehicles or seating positions, it may be difficult to install a child restraint system so that it does not move at all. Some side-to-side or back-and-forth movement can be expected and should not reduce the child restraint system’s effectiveness.

If the child restraint system is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child restraint system that can be firmly secured in the desired seating position.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the recommended child restraint system.

**3. Secure the child in the child restraint system.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child restraint system according to the child restraint system maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child restraint system can be thrown out of the restraint system in a crash and seriously injured.

### **Storing a Child Restraint System**

When you are not using a child restraint system, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop and injure someone.





## Protecting Children

### Child Restraint System for EU Countries

#### Child Restraint Suitability for Various Seat Positions

Please use only the particular child restraints as given in this table.

Mass Group	Seating position		
	Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Centre
group 0 Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+ Up to 13 kg	X	U	U
group I 9 kg to 18 kg	UF*	U or Honda Iso-Fix	U
group II 15 kg to 25 kg	UF*	U	U
group III 22 kg to 36 kg	UF*	U	U

UF= Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

U= Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X= Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*: Move the front seat as far back as possible.

The particular child restraints in the above table are Honda Genuine Parts.

**For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.**

CONTINUED

Driver and Passenger Safety **37**





## Protecting Children

---

### **⚠ WARNING**

**The use of any child restraint system which is not suitable for Honda vehicles would not properly secure the infant or child who could therefore be killed or seriously injured.**

#### *For some types*

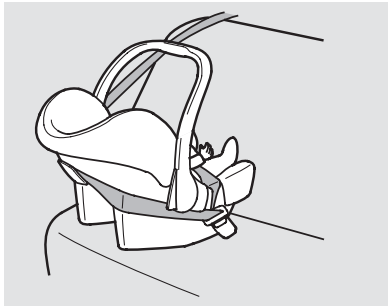
Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at the outer seating positions on the rear seat. These anchorages are only to be used with a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages. Refer to page 62 for how to install a child restraint system to the lower anchorages.





## Protecting Children

### Protecting Infants



#### **Child Restraint System Type**

Only a rearward facing child restraint system provides proper support for a baby's head, neck and back. Infants up to about one year of age must be restrained in a rearward facing child restraint system.

Two types of restraints may be used: a restraint system designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible restraint system used in

the rearward facing, reclining mode.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Placing a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.**

**Always place a rearward facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.**

We recommend that an infant be restrained in a rearward facing child restraint system, until the infant is at least one year old, reaches the restraint system maker's weight or height limit, and is able to sit up without support.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the recommended child restraint system.

#### **Rearward Facing Child Restraint System Placement**

For EU countries, an approved rearward facing child restraint system should be placed in any seating position in the back seat (see page 37).

(Except for EU countries)

In this vehicle, a rearward facing child restraint system can be placed in one of the outside positions in the back seat, but not in the front seat.

#### *For some types*

If you use the vehicle's lower anchorages to secure a child restraint system, it should be placed in one of the outside positions in the back seat (see page 62).

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

***On vehicles with a passenger's front airbag, never put a rearward facing child restraint system in the front seat.*** If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the restraint with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant. If an infant must be closely watched, we recommend that another adult sit in the back seat with the baby.

***Do not put a rearward facing child restraint system in a forward-facing position.*** If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

As required by E.C.E Regulation No. 94;

**▲ WARNING**



**Extreme Hazard!**

**Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rearward facing child restraint system with great force. The rearward facing child restraint system can be dislodged or struck with enough force to cause very serious injury to

the infant.

When properly installed, a rearward facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front-seat passenger from moving the seat as far back as recommended (see page 15). Or it may prevent them from locking the seat-back in the desired upright position (see page 16).

In either case, we recommend that you place the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger seat, move the front seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or you may wish to get a smaller child restraint system that allows you to safely carry a front passenger.





## Protecting Children

### **Rearward Facing Child Restraint System Installation**

To properly route a lap/shoulder belt through a child restraint system, follow the restraint system maker's instructions.

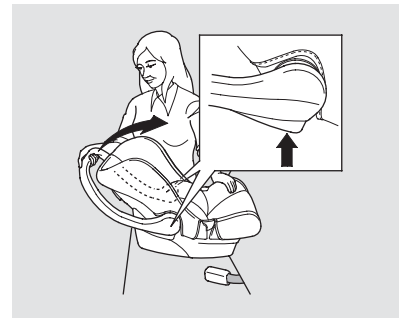
For EU countries, refer to page 37 for installing a child restraint system.

The lap/shoulder belts in the back seating positions have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child restraint system.

The following pages provide instructions and tips on how to secure a rearward facing child restraint system with this type of seat belt. (The procedures in these pages are described based on a child restraint system available in EU countries.)

### *For some types*

If you have a child restraint system designed to be attached to the vehicle's lower anchorages, follow the instructions on page 62 .



1. Place the child restraint system in the desired back seating position. Press both of the release buttons at the bottom of the handle, then pull up the handle to the upright position. Make sure the handle is latched and the child restraint is positioned well back in the seat-back.

*CONTINUED*



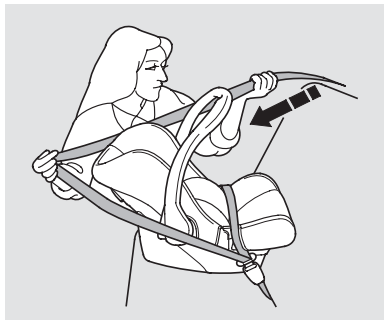




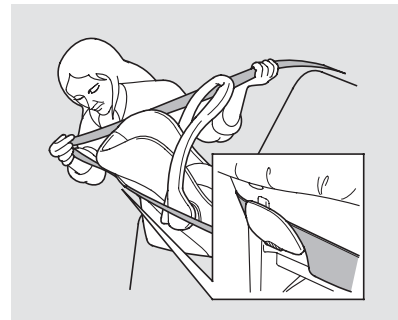
## Protecting Children



2. Route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



3. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops.



4. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the clip at the back of the restraint, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.





## Protecting Children

5. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked and you will need to repeat these steps.



6. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child restraint system will not be secure. To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child restraint system, or push on the back of the restraint system, while pulling up on the belt.



7. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the child restraint system is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

*CONTINUED*





## Protecting Children

---

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child restraint system, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

*On vehicles without additional lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

See page 45 for how to secure a rearward facing child restraint system in the centre back seat with the lap belt.

For tips on installing a rearward facing child restraint system with either type of seat belt, see page 46 .





## Protecting Children

### ***Installing a Rearward Facing Child Restraint System with the Lap Belt (For some types)***

To install a rearward facing child restraint system in the centre back seat with the lap belt, route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



Then pull hard on the loose end of the belt to remove any slack (it may help to put weight on the child restraint system while pulling on the belt).

Finally, push and pull the restraint forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the restraint is not secure, unlatch the belt and repeat these steps.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for placing a child restraint system.

CONTINUED

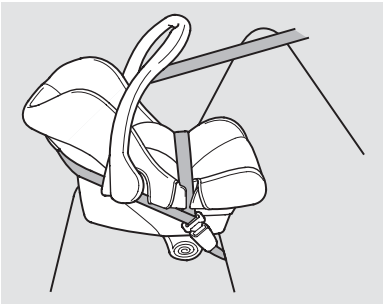




## Protecting Children

---

### ***Rearward Facing Child Restraint System Installation Tips***



For proper protection, an infant must ride in a reclined, or semi-reclined position. To determine the proper reclining angle, check with the baby's doctor or follow the child restraint system maker's recommendations.

To achieve the desired reclining angle, it may help to put a rolled up towel under the toe of the restraint as shown.

### ***Additional Precaution for Infants***

“Never let children kneel on seats or stand while the vehicle is in motion. The violent forces created during emergency braking will cause the children to be thrown forward. The children could be seriously injured or killed.”





## Protecting Children

### Protecting Small Children



#### **Child Restraint System Type**

A child at least one year old who can sit up without support, and who fits within the child restraint system maker's weight and height limits, should be restrained in a front facing, upright child restraint system.

Of the different restraint systems available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child stay in the child restraint system as long as possible, until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the restraint system.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the recommended child restraint system.

#### **Front Facing Child Restraint System Placement**

In this vehicle, the best place to install a front facing child restraint system is in one of the seating positions in the outer back seat.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for placing a child restraint system.

***On vehicles with a passenger's airbag, placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries. If a small child must be closely watched, we recommend that another adult sit in the back seat with the child.

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

---

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

**If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and properly restrain the child.**

If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle, and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system.

### ***Front Facing Child Restraint System Installation***

To properly route a lap/shoulder belt through a child restraint system, follow the restraint system maker's instructions.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for installing a child restraint system.

When you secure a front facing child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt, you must use a locking clip on the belt (see page 53 ).





## Protecting Children

The lap/shoulder belts in the back seating positions have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child restraint system.

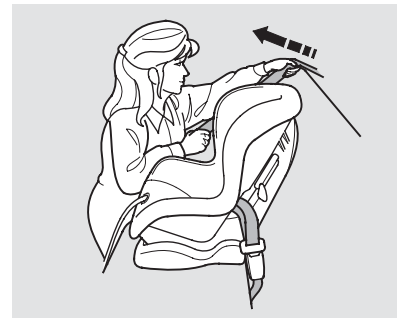
The following pages provide instructions on how to secure a front facing child restraint system with this type of seat belt. (The procedures in these pages are described based on a child restraint system available in EU countries.)

*For some types*

If you have a child restraint system designed to be attached to the vehicle's lower anchorages, follow the instructions on page 62 .



1. Place the child restraint system in the desired back seating position. Make sure the child restraint is positioned well back in the seat-back.
2. Route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



3. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops.

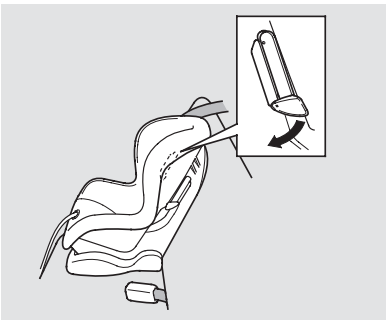
CONTINUED



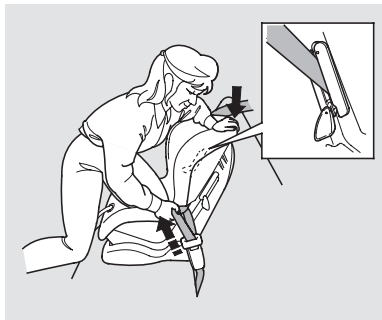




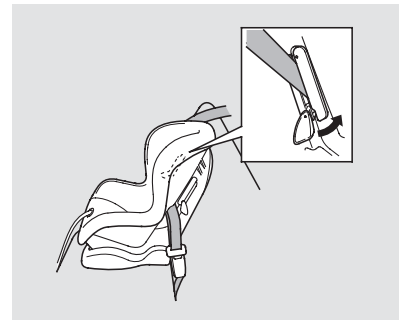
## Protecting Children



4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.
5. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked and you will need to repeat these steps.



6. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child restraint system will not be secure. It may help to put weight on the child restraint system, or push on the back of the restraint system, while pulling up on the belt.

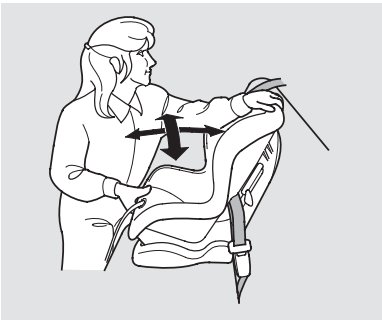


7. Secure the belt in the slit by pushing up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted and it is positioned properly in the slit.





## Protecting Children



8. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the child restraint system is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child restraint system, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.



*On vehicles without additional lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

When you secure a front facing child restraint system with a lap/shoulder belt, be sure you install a locking clip on the seat belt (see page 53).

*For some types*

See page 52 for how to secure a front facing child restraint system in the centre back seat with the lap belt.

*CONTINUED*

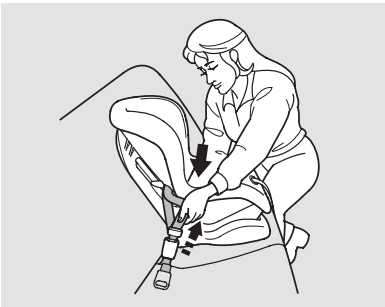




## Protecting Children

---

### ***Installing a Front Facing Child Restraint System with the Lap Belt (For some types)***



To install a front facing child restraint system in the centre back seat with the lap belt, route the belt through the restraint according to the restraint system maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.

Pull hard on the loose end of the belt to remove any slack; it may help to put weight on the child restraint system while pulling on the belt.

Finally, push and pull the restraint forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving manoeuvres. If the restraint is not secure, unlatch the belt and repeat these steps.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for placing a child restraint system.





## Protecting Children

### **Using a Seat Belt Locking Clip**

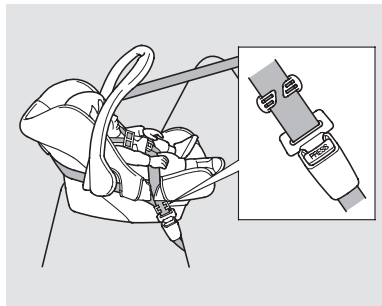
*On vehicles without additional lockable retractor fitted to the seat where the child is positioned*

Always use a seat belt locking clip when you secure a child restraint system to your vehicle with a lap/shoulder belt. This helps prevent the child restraint system from shifting position or overturning.

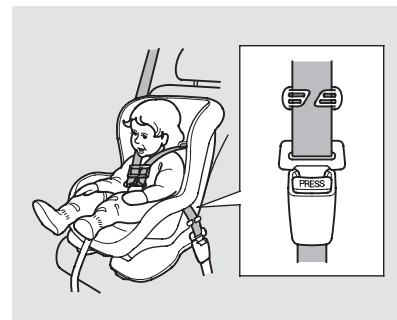
A locking clip is usually included with the child restraint system. If you need a clip, contact the seat's manufacturer or a store that sells child restraints.

If it is necessary to put a front facing child restraint system in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child restraint system is firmly secured to the vehicle, and the child is properly strapped in the restraint system (see page 47).

To install a locking clip, do the following:



1. Place the child restraint in the passenger's seat. Route the lap/shoulder belt through the restraint according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.
2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Pull on the shoulder part of the belt to make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.



3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they won't slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

---

5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Push and pull on the child restraint system to verify that it is held firmly in place. If it is not, repeat these steps until the restraint is secure.

### ***Additional Precaution for Small Children***

“Never let children kneel on seats or stand while the vehicle is in motion. The violent forces created during emergency braking will cause the children to be thrown forward. The children could be seriously injured or killed.”





## Protecting Children

### Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a front facing child restraint system, the child should sit in the back seat on a booster and wear a lap/shoulder belt. The lap/shoulder belt provides better protection than the lap belt.

We recommend that the child use a booster seat until the child is tall enough to use the seat belt without a booster seat.

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in the front seat.

*On vehicles with a passenger's front airbag*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Allowing a larger child to sit improperly in the front seat can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.**

**If a larger child must sit in front, make sure the child moves the seat as far back as possible, uses a booster seat if needed, and wears the seat belt properly.**

*On vehicles with side airbags*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Leaning over the front door can result in serious injury or death if the side airbag inflates.**

**Always sit upright with their back against the seat-back.**

CONTINUED





## Protecting Children

### ***Additional Precaution for Larger Children***

“Never let children kneel on seats or stand while the vehicle is in motion. The violent forces created during emergency braking will cause the children to be thrown forward. The children could be seriously injured or killed.”

### ***Checking Seat Belt Fit***



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child sit in the rear seat, all the way back against the seat, and put on the seat belt. Follow the instructions on page 18. Then check how the belt fits.

If the shoulder part of the belt rests over the child's collarbone and against the centre of the chest, and the lap belt rests over the child's hipbones and touches the tops of the thighs as shown, the child is probably big enough to wear the seat belt.

However, if the shoulder belt touches or crosses the child's neck, or if the lap belt crosses the child's stomach, the child needs to use a booster seat.

***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck or over the stomach.*** This could result in serious neck and internal injuries during a crash.





## Protecting Children

**Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.

**Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt, severely compromise the protective capability of the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

**Two children should never use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

### Using a Booster Seat



If a child needs a booster seat, we recommend choosing a high or low-back style that allows the child to be directly secured with the lap/shoulder belt.

Whichever style you select, follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

A child should continue using a booster seat until the child exceeds the booster seat manufacturer's requirements.

Even then, the child may still need to use a booster seat. Note that some countries now require children to use boosters until they reach a certain age and/or weight. Be sure to check current laws in the countries where you intend to drive.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the booster seat placement.

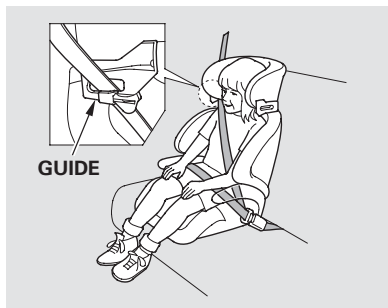
CONTINUED







## Protecting Children



*For some types*  
An optional back-rest is available for a specific booster seat (see page 57 ). Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat maker's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck (see page 18 ).

### ***When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front***

It is recommended that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

The back seat is the safest place for a child of any age or size.

In addition, the passenger's front airbag (on some types), poses serious risks to children. If the front seat is too far forward and the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, or the child is unrestrained or out of position, an inflating front airbag can kill or seriously injure the child.

On some types, the side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in the front, there are other important factors you should consider.

## **58** Driver and Passenger Safety





## Protecting Children

### ***Physical Size***

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit over the hips, chest, and shoulder (see pages 18 and 55). If the seat belt does not fit properly, the child should not sit in the front.

### ***Maturity***

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly positioned and secured.
- If your vehicle has side airbags, remind the child not to lean toward the door.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.





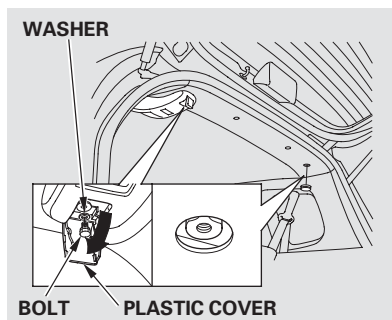
## Protecting Children

### Using Child Restraints with Tethers (For some types)

Your vehicle has two anchor points on the ceiling near the tailgate opening for securing a tether-style child restraint system to the vehicle.

Since a tether can provide additional security, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available. (The owners may check with the child restraint system maker to determine whether a tether is available for a particular child restraint system.)

Remove the rear head restraints (see page 126). The removed head restraints should be secured so they will not be thrown while you are driving. Make sure to replace the rear head restraints when the child restraint systems are not in use.



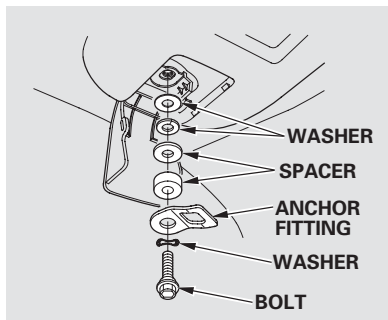
The anchor points are located on both sides of the ceiling near the tailgate opening. One side is covered with only a cap and one side is located inside the plastic cover. The cap which covers one of the anchors may be removed by hand, and a flat tipped screwdriver may be used to remove the plastic cover from the other anchor point.

Remove the bolt and washer from the left anchor point.

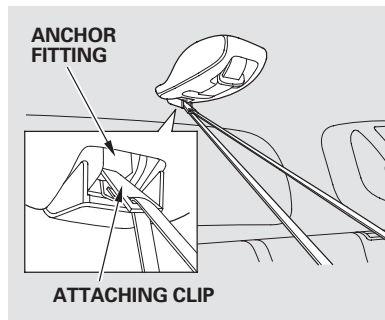




## Protecting Children



Attach the anchor fitting to the anchor point as shown in the illustration.



Attach the attaching clip to the anchor fitting as shown in the illustration, then tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

To attach the tether to the child restraint system, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions.

When the child restraint system is used, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

**WARNING:** *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*



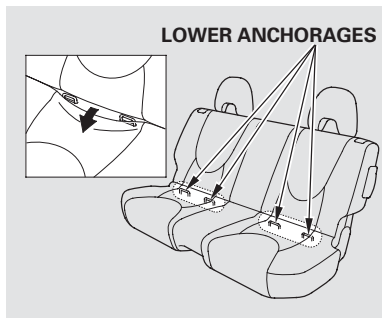


## Protecting Children

### Using the Lower Anchorages (For some types)

Your vehicle is equipped with lower anchorages at the outer rear seats. These anchorages are located between the seat-back and seat bottom and are to be used only with a child restraint system designed for use with the lower anchorages.

For EU countries, refer to page 37 for the recommended child restraint system.



The location of each lower anchorage is shown in the above illustration.

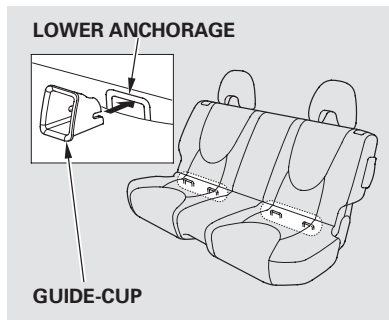
To install a child restraint system designed to be attached to the lower anchorages:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or centre seat belt away from the anchorages.
2. Make sure there are no foreign objects around the anchorages. Foreign objects could get in the way of a secure connection between the child restraint system and the anchorages.

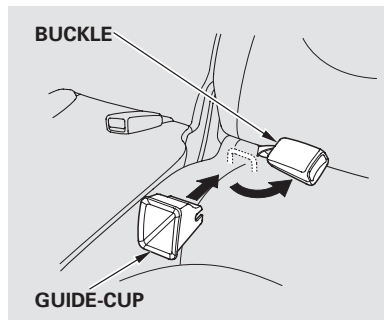




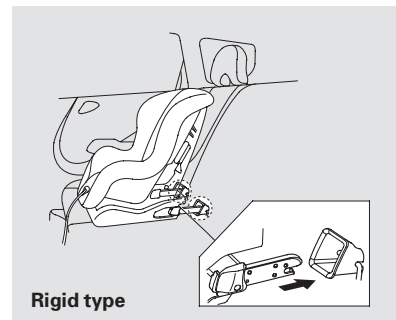
## Protecting Children



*(For some types)*  
Install the child restraint system according to the seat manufacturer's instructions.



To attach the guide-cups to the seat's lower anchorages, insert as shown on the illustration. Occasionally, the seat belt buckle is wedged into the seats when operating them.



3. Put the child restraint system in the rear left or right vehicle seat and attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the child restraint system maker's instructions.

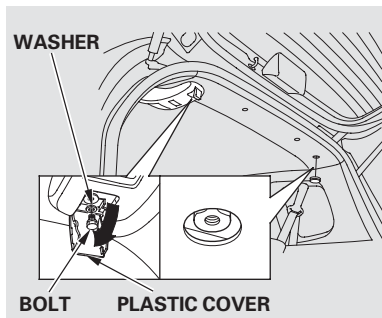
CONTINUED





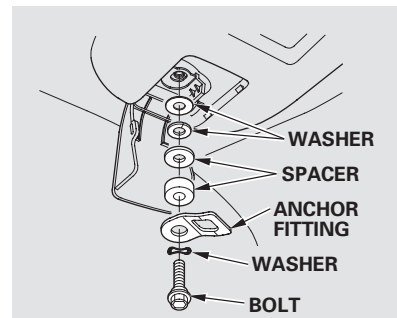
## Protecting Children

4. Remove the rear head restraints (see page 126 ). The removed head restraints should be secured so they will not be thrown while you are driving. Make sure to replace the rear head restraints when the child restraint systems are not in use.



5. The anchor points are located on both sides of the ceiling near the tailgate opening. One side is covered with only a cap and one side is located inside the plastic cover. The cap which covers one of the anchors may be removed by hand, and a flat tipped screwdriver may be used to remove the plastic cover from the other anchor point.

Remove the bolt and washer from the left anchor point.

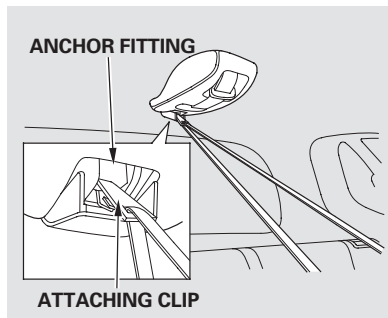


6. Attach the anchor fitting to the anchor point as shown in the illustration.





## Protecting Children



To attach the tether to the child restraint system, follow the child restraint system maker's instructions.

When the child restraint system is used, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

**WARNING:** *Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

7. Attach the attaching clip to the anchor fitting as shown in the illustration, then tighten the strap according to the child restraint system maker's instructions. Make sure the strap is not twisted.







## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

---

### Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all five seating positions. On some types, the centre position of the rear seat has a lap belt.

On some types, the front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.



### Seat Belt Reminder Indicator (EU models)

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If you continue driving without fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes again at regular intervals.

### (Except EU models)

The seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind you and your passengers to fasten your belts. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened before the ignition is turned to the ON (II) position, the indicator will come on and a beeper will also sound. The beeper will stop after a few seconds, but the indicator will stay on until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

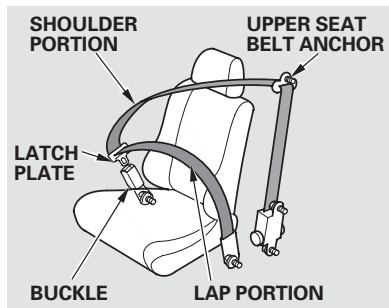
On some types, the seat belt system does not have a reminder beeper. Only the indicator comes on as described above.





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### Lap/Shoulder Belt



Your vehicle has two types of lap/shoulder belts. The centre seating position of the rear seat has the lap/shoulder belt with a detachable anchor. All other seating positions have a one-piece lap/shoulder belt.

*For some types*  
The centre seating position of the rear seat has the lap belt.

The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched.

To unlock the belt, push the red PRESS button on the buckle.

Guide the belt across your body to the door pillar. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All lap/shoulder belts have an emergency lockable retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

See page 18 for instructions on how to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly.

The lap/shoulder belts in all rear outboard seating positions have an additional locking mechanism that must be activated to secure a child restraint. (See pages 41 and 48 for instructions on how to secure child restraints with this type of seat belt.)

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will be activated. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

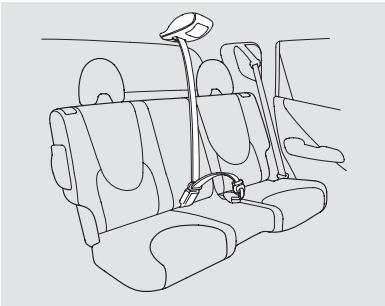
To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

CONTINUED





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts



On some types, the lap/shoulder belt in the centre seating position on the rear seat is equipped with a detachable anchor that has two parts: a small latch plate and an anchor buckle.

The detachable anchor should be securely latched whenever the centre seating position is used. For more information about the detachable anchor, see page 131 .

To fasten the belt, extend it from the anchor on the ceiling by pulling the metal plate.

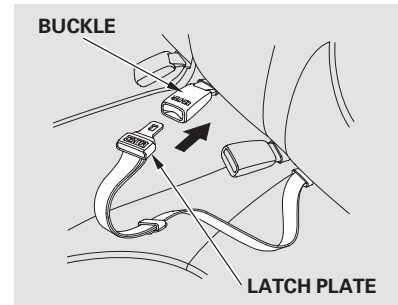
Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle, then insert the plate into the buckle. Tug on the seat belt to verify that the detachable anchor is securely latched.

Insert the latch plate into the buckle marked **CENTRE**, then tug on the belt to make sure it is securely latched.

To unlock the belt, push the red **PRESS** button on the buckle.

### Lap Belt (For some types)

The lap belt has one manually-adjusted belt that fits across the hips.



To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle marked **CENTER**, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched.

To unlock the belt, push the red **PRESS** button.

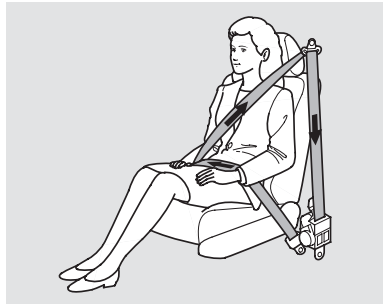




## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

See page 19 for how to lengthen the lap belt, and how to properly position the belt.

### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners (For some types)



For added protection during a moderate to severe frontal collision, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. If your front airbags inflate, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in place.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled in the normal way.



The SRS indicator will come on if there is a problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (see page 76).





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

---

### Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and that the lap/shoulder belts retract easily. Any belt not in good condition or not working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** *No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.*

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by the dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed.

Automatic seat belt tensioners that deployed during a crash must be replaced.

**WARNING:** *It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.*

**WARNING:** *Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*

## 70 Driver and Passenger Safety





## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

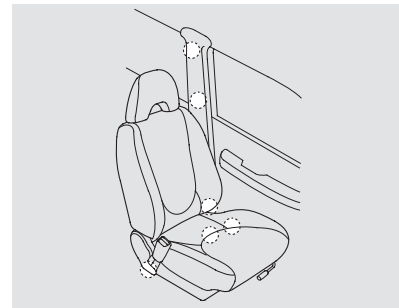
**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

For information on how to clean your seat belts, see page 350 .

### *Anchorage Points*

When replacing the seat belts, make certain to use the anchorage points shown in the illustrations.

(Front Seat)



*CONTINUED*

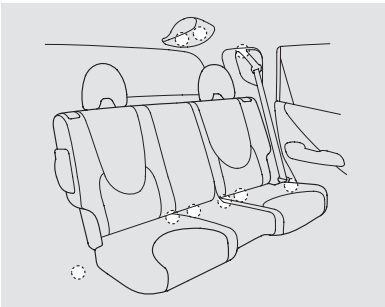




## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

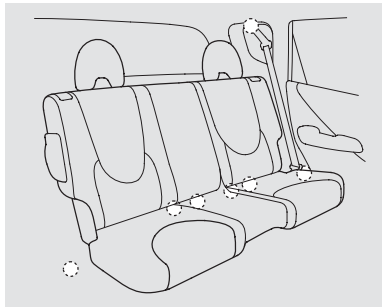
---

**(Rear Seat)**  
*On the models with three lap/shoulder belts in the back seat*



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

*On the models with a lap belt in the centre position of the back seat*



On some types, the outside positions of the rear seat have lap/shoulder belts. The centre position has a lap belt.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

### SRS Components

Your Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) includes:

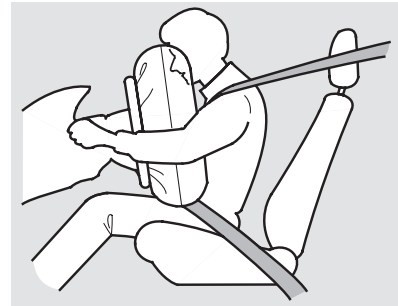
- Two front airbags (on some types). The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG."

*(For some types)*

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 75).

- Automatic seat belt tensioners that tighten the front seat belts during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 69).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe frontal collision.
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors information about the sensors, the control unit, and the airbag activators when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with the system (see page 76).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

### How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, the sensors will detect rapid deceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the front airbags and activate the automatic seat belt tensioners.

*CONTINUED*





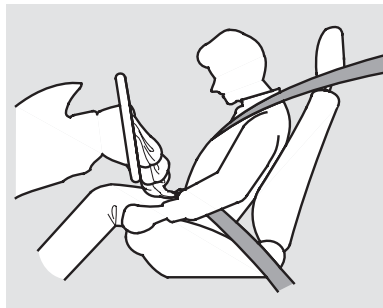


## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

During a frontal crash, your seat belt helps restrain your lower body and torso, while the tensioner tightens and locks the seat belt to help keep you in place. Your airbag provides a cushion to help restrain and protect your head and chest.

Since both front airbags use the same sensors, both airbags normally inflate at the same time. However, it is possible for only one airbag to inflate.

This can occur when the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the front airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.



After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is approximately one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the front airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

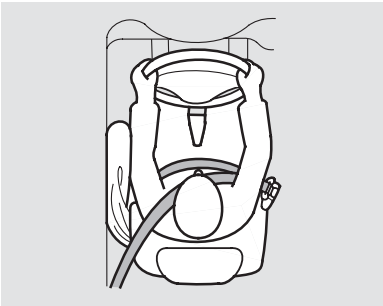
### 74 Driver and Passenger Safety





## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

### How Your Side Airbags Work (For some types)



Your vehicle is equipped with side airbags for the driver and a front seat passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the front seat-backs, and both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG."

If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, the sensors will detect rapid deceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

If a front passenger leans sideways and his head is in the deployment path of the side airbag, he can be seriously injured by an inflating side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a child. For the information of the side airbags hazards, see pages 29 and 55.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

---

### How the SRS Indicator Works



The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your automatic seat belt tensioners (see page 69).

On models with side airbags, this indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator will come on for several seconds then go out. This tells you that the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

If you see any of these indications, your front or side airbags may not deploy, or your seat belt tensioners may not work when you need them. See your dealer as soon as possible.





## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbags or tensioners do not work properly.**

**Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem.**

### **Airbag Service**

Your front and side airbag systems (if equipped) and automatic seat belt tensioners are virtually maintenance-free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- **Your airbags ever inflate.** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit, automatic seat belt tensioners, and other related parts. Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by your dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

- **The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.** Take your vehicle to your authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, the airbags might not inflate when you need them.

Handling is allowed by trained personnel only. It is prohibited to remove the airbag unit/belt-tensioner from the vehicle. In case of malfunction, shutdown or after airbag inflation/belt-tensioner operation you have to ask a qualified shop for repair or removal.

CONTINUED





## Additional Information About Your Airbags (For some types)

---

### Additional Safety Precautions

- **Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- **Do not tamper with airbag and automatic seat belt tensioner components or wiring for any reason.** Tampering could cause the airbags and automatic seat belt tensioners to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.

### On vehicles with side airbags

- **Do not expose the front seat-backs to water.** If rain or spilled water soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag system from working properly.
- **Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a collision.

See page 240 for further information and precautions relating to your airbags.





## Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. You should have no problem with carbon monoxide entering the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

**⚠ WARNING**


**Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.**

**Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.**

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the tailgate open, air flow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle, even in an unconfined area, with the engine running, adjust the heating and cooling system/climate control system as follows:

1. Select the Fresh Air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.





## Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Read these labels carefully. If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your dealer for a replacement.

On some types, the label shown below is attached to the back of the bonnet.



• SRS Airbag

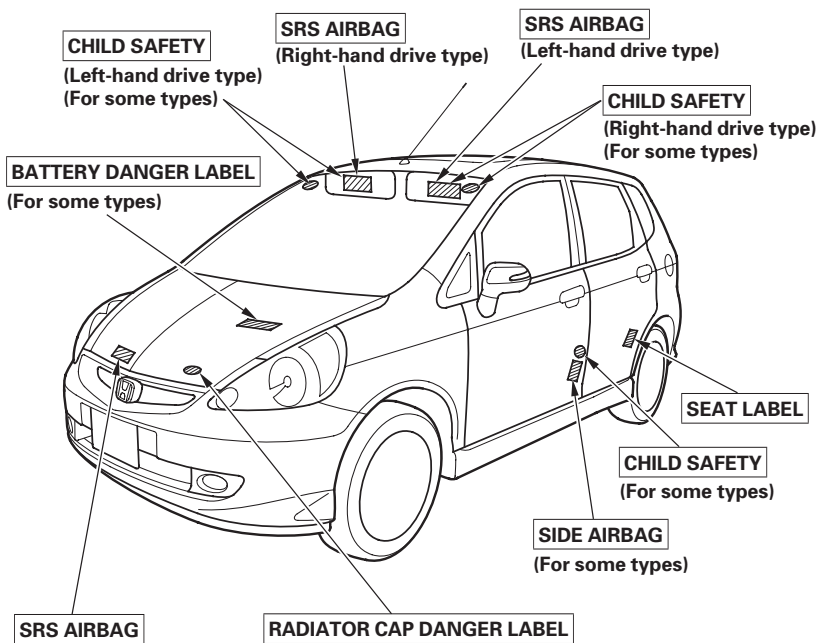
• SRS Airbag



• Safety alert symbol



• Follow service manual instructions carefully





## Safety Labels

On vehicles with side airbags, the label shown below is attached to each front doorjamb.



• Side Airbag



• Safety alert symbol



• Follow owner's manual instructions carefully

On some models, the labels shown below are attached to the windscreen and each front doorjamb.









## Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations .....	84
Indicator Lights.....	86
Gauges .....	96
Speedometer .....	96
Tachometer .....	96
Odometer.....	97
Trip Meter.....	97
Segment Distance and Fuel Mileage .....	97
Outside Temperature Indicator.....	98
Fuel Gauge .....	99
Controls Near the Steering	
Wheel.....	100
Headlights .....	102
Instrument Panel Brightness...	103

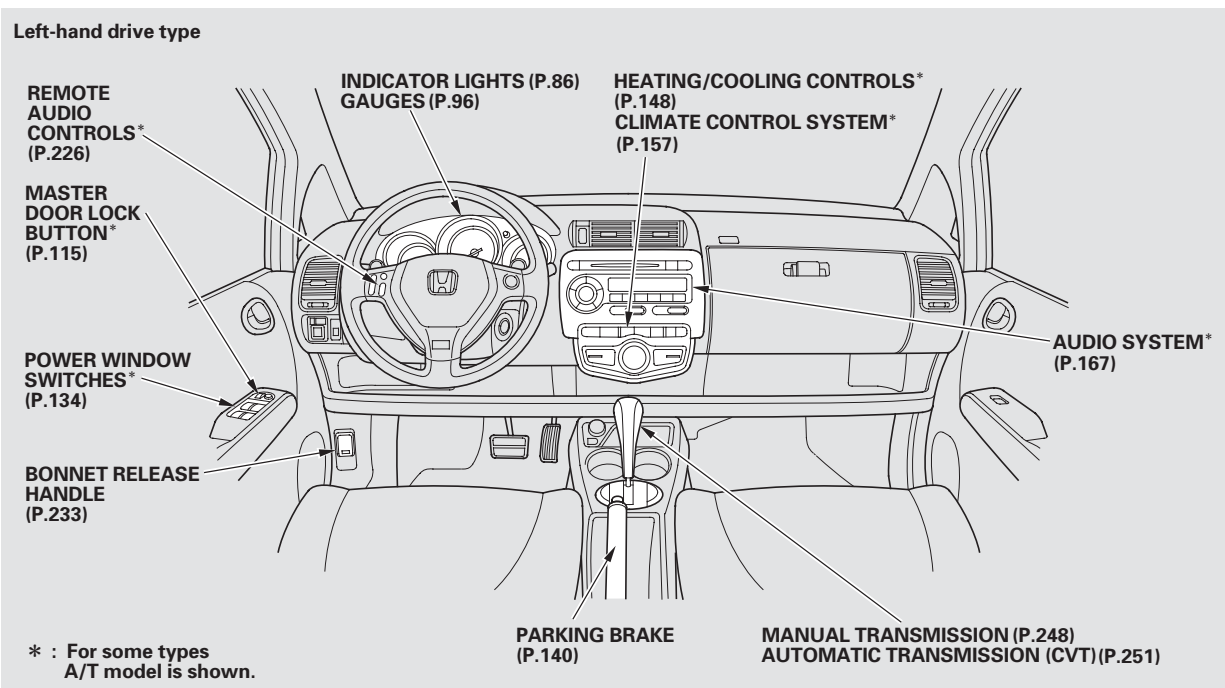
Turn Signals .....	103
Windscreen Wipers.....	104
Windscreen Washers.....	105
Rear Window Wiper and Washer .....	105
Hazard Warning.....	106
Rear Window Demister .....	106
Rear Fog Light.....	107
Front Fog Light .....	107
Front and Rear Fog Lights.....	108
Headlight Adjuster .....	109
Steering Wheel Adjustment .....	109
Keys and Locks.....	110
Keys.....	110
Immobilizer System.....	112
Ignition Switch .....	113
Door Locks.....	114
Power Door Locks.....	115
Remote Transmitter.....	117
Childproof Door Locks .....	121
Tailgate .....	121
Glove Box .....	123
Seats .....	124
Front Seat Adjustments.....	124
Driver's Seat Height Adjustment .....	125

Head Restraints .....	125
Folding the Rear Seats.....	127
Create the Luggage Space .....	128
Detachable Anchor.....	131
Tonneau Cover.....	132
Power Windows .....	134
Sunroof.....	136
Mirrors.....	137
Adjusting the Power Mirrors...	138
Heated Door Mirrors .....	138
Folding Door Mirrors .....	139
Sun Visor.....	139
Vanity Mirror .....	140
Parking Brake .....	140
Coat Hook.....	141
Beverage Holder.....	141
Cigarette Lighter .....	142
Ashtray.....	142
Accessory Power Socket .....	143
Luggage Hooks.....	144
Interior Lights .....	144
Spotlights.....	144
Individual Map Lights .....	144
Ceiling Light.....	145
Luggage Area Light .....	145





## Control Locations

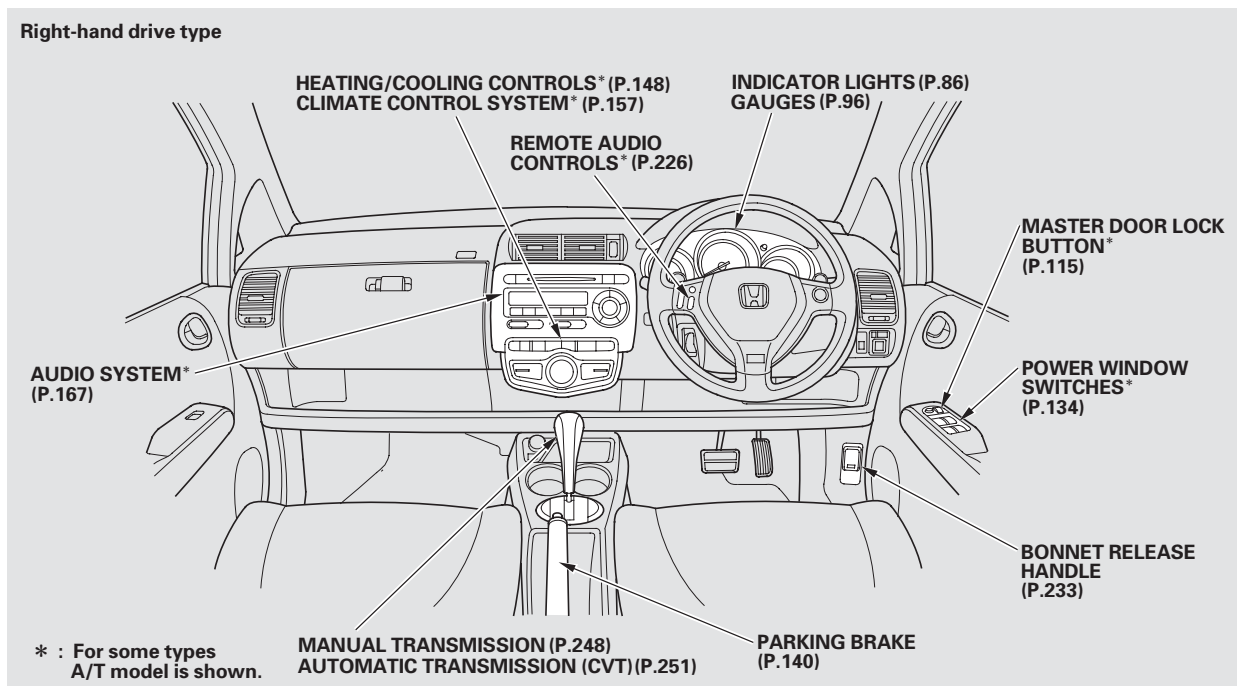


### 84 Instruments and Controls





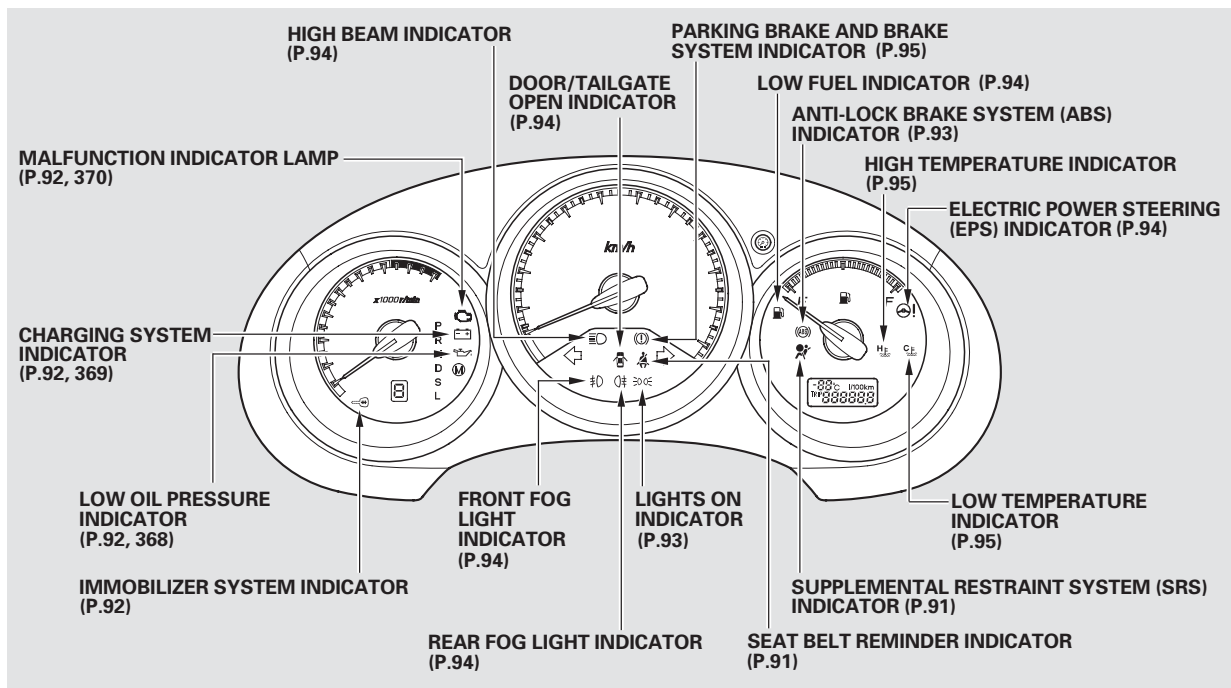
## Control Locations





# Indicator Lights

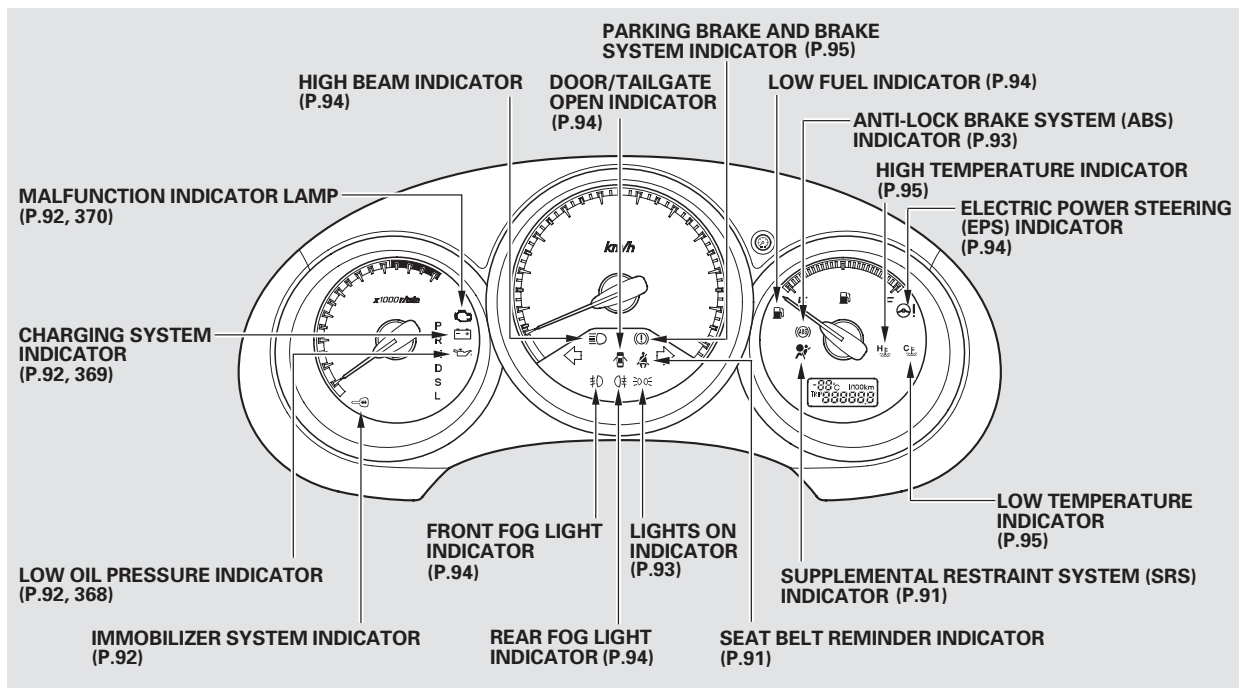
*Honda CVT + 7 Speed Mode model*





## Indicator Lights

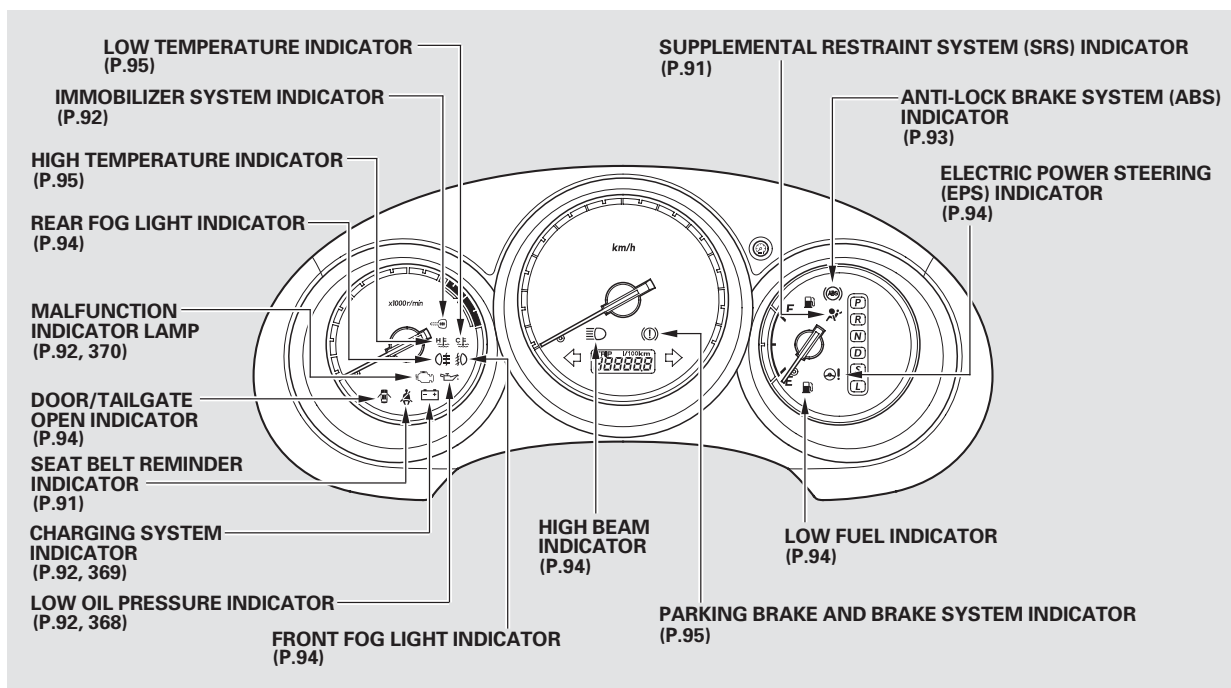
### Automatic transmission (CVT) model





## Indicator Lights

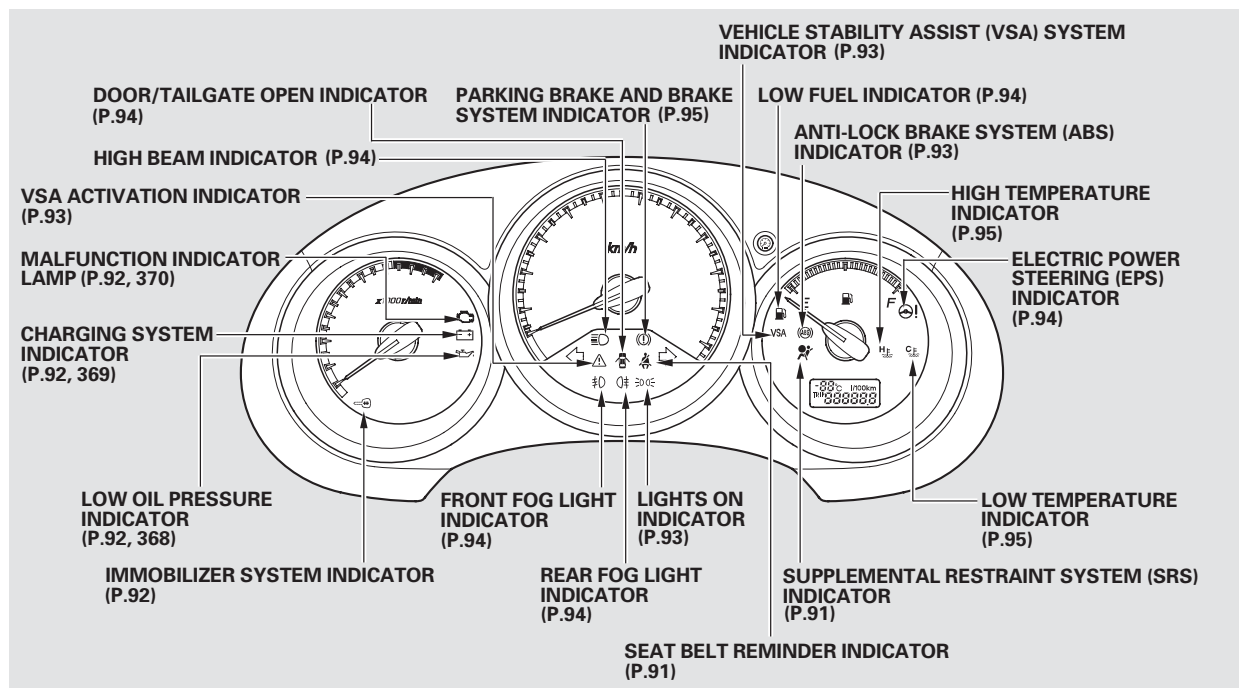
*Automatic transmission (CVT) model*





## Indicator Lights

### Manual transmission model

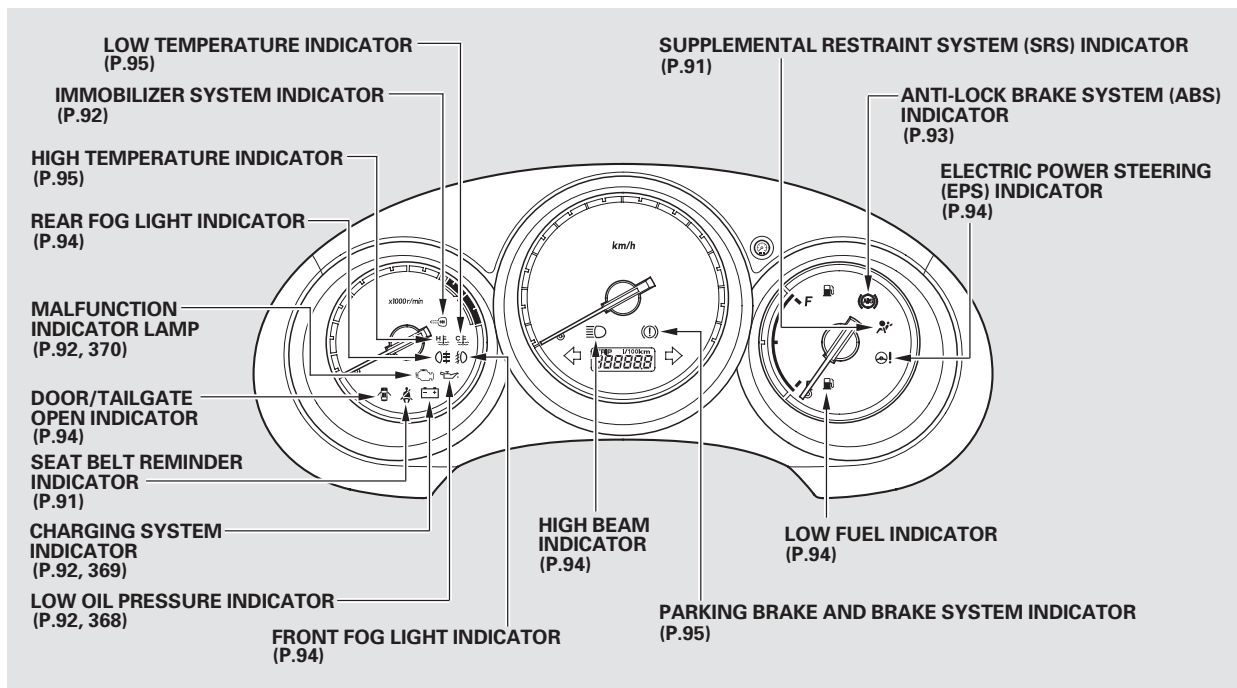






## Indicator Lights

### Manual transmission model



## 90 Instruments and Controls





## Indicator Lights

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.



### Seat Belt Reminder Indicator (EU models)

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If you continue driving without fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes again at regular intervals.

### (Except EU models)

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to you and your passengers to protect yourselves by fastening the seat belts. The indicator stays on until you fasten seat belt. The indicator stays off if you fasten your seat belt before turning on the ignition. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

If you do not fasten your seat belt, the beeper will stop after a few seconds but the indicator stays on until you do. Both the indicator and the beeper stay off if you fasten your seat belt before turning on the ignition switch.

On some types, the seat belt system does not have a reminder beeper. Only the indicator comes on as described above.



### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags or automatic seat belt tensioners. On models equipped with side airbags, this indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags. For more information, see page 76 .





## Indicator Lights



### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

See page 370 .



### Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For more information, see page 368 .



### Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For more information, see page 369 .



### Immobilizer System Indicator (For some types)

This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly-coded ignition key. If it is not a properly-coded key, the indicator will blink and the engine will not start (see page 112 ).

This indicator also blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position.



### Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If the indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see pages 328 and 329 ). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the Hazard Warning button, both turn signal indicators blink. All turn signals on the outside of the vehicle should flash.



### Hazard Warning Indicator (For some types)

This indicator blinks with both turn signal indicators when you turn on the Hazard Warning button.





## Indicator Lights



### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator (For some types)

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If this indicator comes on and stays on at any other time, or it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. See page 265 for more information on the VSA system.



### VSA Activation Indicator (For some types)

This indicator has three functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 264).
3. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. See page 265 for more information on the VSA system.



### Lights On Indicator (For some types)

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the or position. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder beeper will also sound when you open the driver's door.



### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator (For some types)

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock. For more information, see page 261.





## Indicator Lights



### Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the Electric Power Steering system. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. The indicator will not be turned off immediately, so you should drive several kilometers and watch the EPS indicator. If it does not go off, or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the EPS is turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.



### Low Fuel Indicator

If the indicator glows, it means you should refuel, because the tank contains less than:  
7.9 ℓ (2.09 US gal , 1.74 Imp gal)



### High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. See page 102 for information on the headlight controls.



### Rear Fog Light Indicator (For some types)

This indicator lights when you turn on the rear fog light. See page 107 for information on operating the rear fog light.

*For some types*  
See page 108 to operate the front and rear fog lights.



### Door and Tailgate Open Indicator

This indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is not closed tightly.



### Front Fog Light Indicator (For some types)

This indicator lights when you turn on the front fog lights. See page 107 for information on operating the front fog lights.

*For some types*  
See page 108 to operate the front and rear fog lights.





## Indicator Lights



### Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. This indicator is a reminder to check the parking brake. On some types, it comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tyres.
2. If the indicator remains lit after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. For more information, see page 371 .



### High Temperature Indicator

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. In normal driving conditions, the indicator should not be turned on. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the indicator will begin to blink. It may continue to blink as the temperature rises. If this occurs while you are driving, be sure to limit your speed to prevent further overheating. If the indicator remains on, then you must pull safely to the side of the road. See page 366 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine's cooling system.

Do not drive the vehicle while the indicator is on or the engine may be damaged.



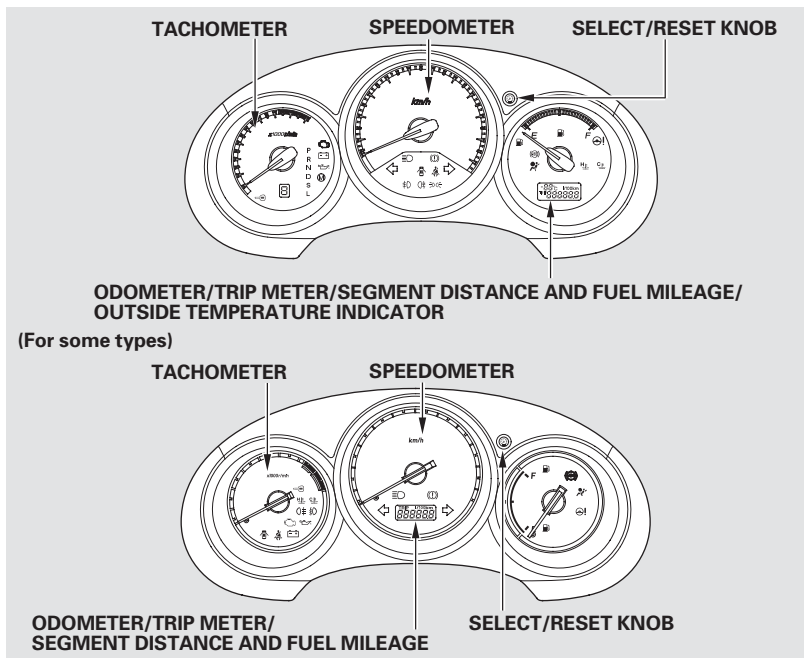
### Low Temperature Indicator

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. There is no problem when this indicator comes on when the engine is cold. If it comes on when the engine is warm (normal operating temperature), have the vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.





## Gauges



On some types, the instrument panel illuminates when you open the driver's door, and the gauges illuminate when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

### Speedometer

This shows your speed in kilometers per hour (km/h) and/or miles per hour (mph) depending on the type.

On some types, when the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a buzzer sounds.

### Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm). To protect the engine from damage, never drive with the tachometer needle in the red zone.





## Gauges

### **Odometer/Trip Meter/Segment Distance and Fuel Mileage/Outside Temperature**

The odometer, the trip meter, the segment distance and fuel mileage and outside temperature (on some types), use the same display.

To switch between the segment display and the Trip Meter/Odometer display, press the Select/Reset Knob.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, what you last selected is displayed.

### **Odometer**

The odometer shows the total distance of kilometers or miles your vehicle has been driven.

### **Trip Meter**

The trip meter shows the distance of kilometers or miles driven since you last reset it.

To reset a trip meter, display it and then press and hold the select/reset knob until the number resets to "0.0".

### **Segment Distance and Fuel Mileage**

You can use this function to display the distance and average fuel mileage for a segment of a trip.

To display the segment distance and fuel mileage, press and release the Select/Reset knob. The Segment Display will come on to remind you that this is the segment distance and fuel mileage display.

#### *For some types*

Fuel Mileage Display (mpg, kilometers per liter, and in liters per 100 km) depends on models.

The segment distance and fuel mileage will be automatically reset when resetting the trip meter. The display will reset if the vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected.







## Gauges

---

### ***Outside Temperature Indicator (For some types)***

This indicator displays the outside temperature in Centigrade.

The temperature sensor is located in the front bumper. Therefore, the temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your speed is under 30 km/h (19 mph).

When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

If the outside temperature is incorrectly displayed, you can adjust it up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  warmer or cooler.

NOTE: The temperature must be stabilized before doing this procedure.

Press the Select/Reset knob for 10 seconds. The following sequence will appear for one second each: 0, 1, 2, 3, -3, -2, -1, 0.

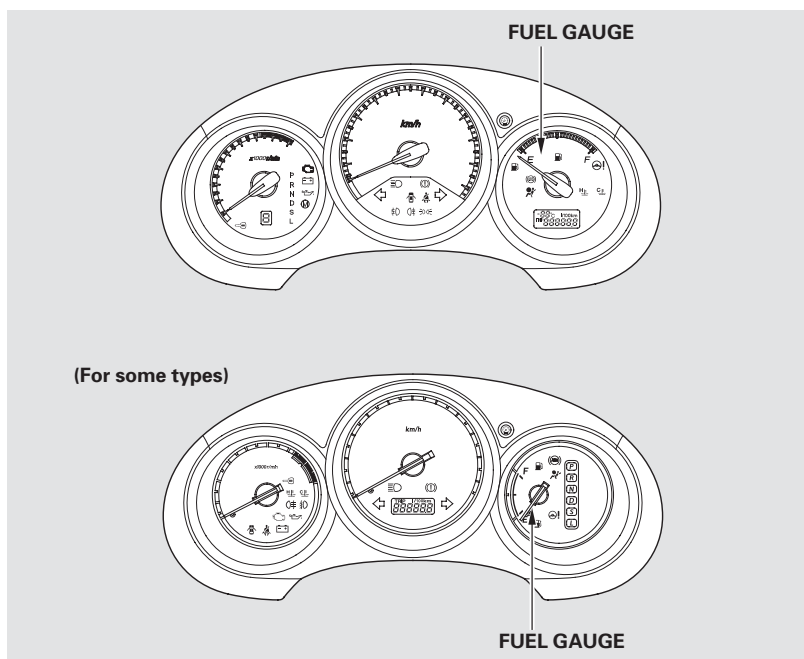
When it reaches the desired value, release the Select/Reset knob. You should see the new outside temperature displayed.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.





## Gauges



### Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It is most accurate when the vehicle is on level ground. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount when you are driving on curvy or hilly roads.

The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition switch. The gauge shows the fuel level reading immediately after you turn the ignition switch back to the ON (II) position.

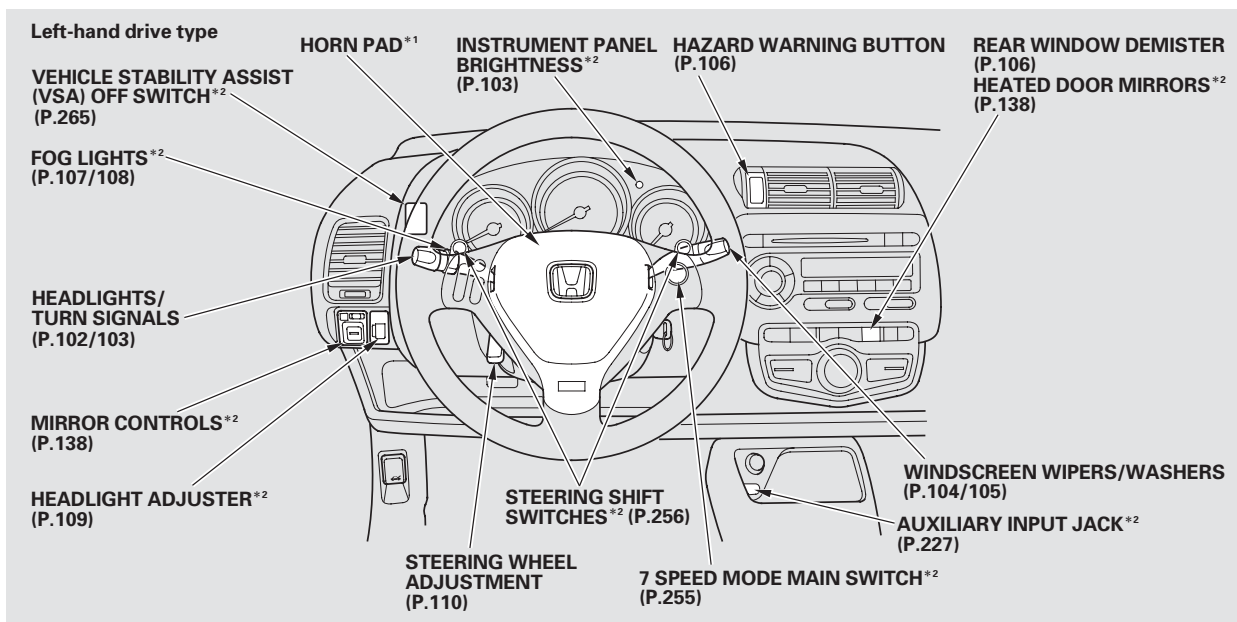
### NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel



\* 1: To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

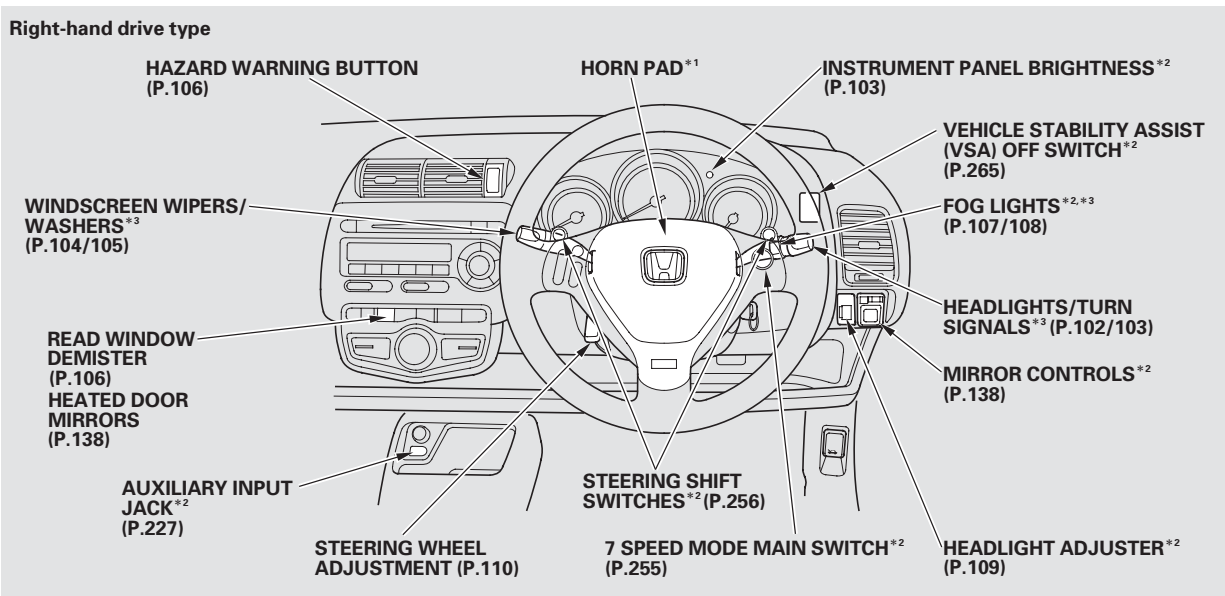
\* 2: For some types

### 100 Instruments and Controls





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel



\* 1: To use the horn, press the centre pad of the steering wheel.

\* 2: For some types

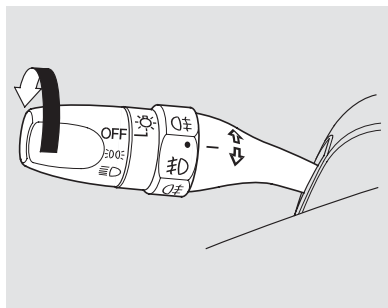
\* 3: On European models, these switches change locations with each other.





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

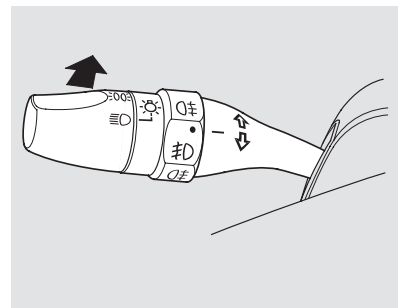
### Headlights



The rotating switch on the lever controls the lights. Turning this switch to the “ ” position turns on the position lights, tail-lights, instrument panel lights, and rear licence plate lights. Turning the switch to the “ ” position turns on the headlights.

If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder beeper when you open the driver’s door.

*For some types*  
When the light switch is in either of these positions, the Lights On indicator comes on as a reminder (see page 93 ).



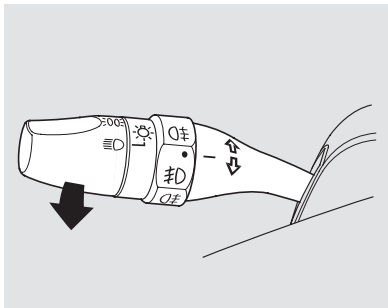
To change from low beams to high beams, push the turn signal lever forward until you hear a click. The high beam indicator will come on (see page 94 ). To return to low beams, pull the turn signal lever back.





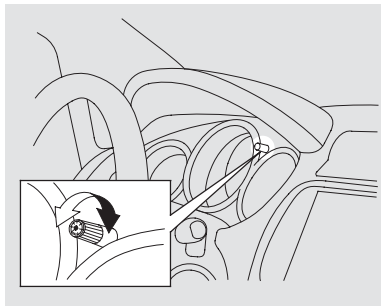
## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

### Instrument Panel Brightness (For some types)



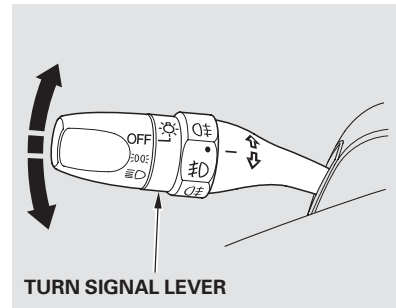
To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will come on and go off.

The high beams will stay on for as long as you hold the lever back, no matter what position the headlight switch is in.



The select/reset knob on the instrument panel controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights. Turn the knob to adjust the brightness.

### Turn Signals



Signal a turn or lane change with this lever. Push down or up on the lever to signal a turn. If you push it up or down all the way, the turn signal continues to blink even when you release the lever. It shuts off automatically as you complete the turn.

*CONTINUED*

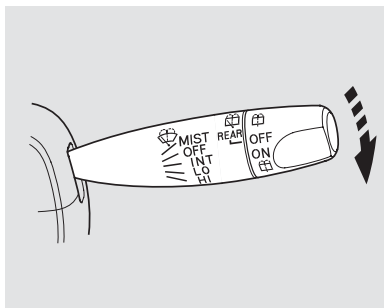




## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

To signal a lane change, push lightly on the turn signal lever in the proper direction and hold it. The lever will return to the centre position as soon as you release it.

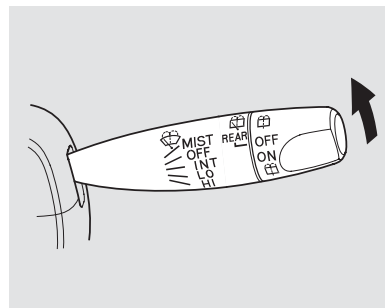
### Windscreen Wipers



This lever controls the windscreen wipers and washers. It has five positions;

- MIST: mist mode
- OFF: off
- INT: intermittent
- LO: low speed
- HI: high speed

To select a position, push the lever up or down.



In intermittent, the wipers operate every few seconds. In low speed and high speed, the wipers run continuously.

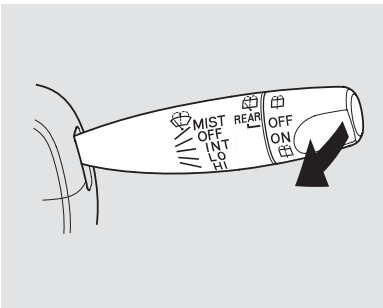
To operate the wipers in mist mode, push the control lever up from the OFF position. The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever. This gives you a quick way to clear the windscreen.





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

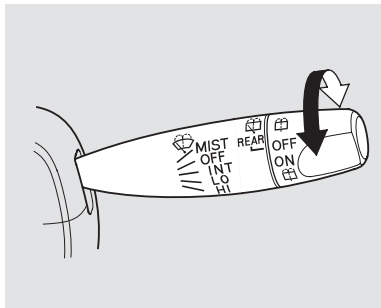
### Windscreen Washers



To clean the windscreen, pull back on the wiper control lever. The washers spray until you release the lever.


On some types, the wipers run at low speed while you're pulling the lever, then complete one more sweep of the windscreen after you release it.

### Rear Window Wiper and Washer



Also, the lever controls the rear window wiper and washer. The rotary switch next to the windscreen wiper and washer switch is for the rear window wiper and washer. Turn to "ON" to activate the rear window wiper.

On some types, the rear window wiper operates every seven seconds.

Turn and hold the switch one position up from "ON" to  to activate the washer and wiper; or turn and hold the switch one position down from "OFF" to activate the washer only.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washer.

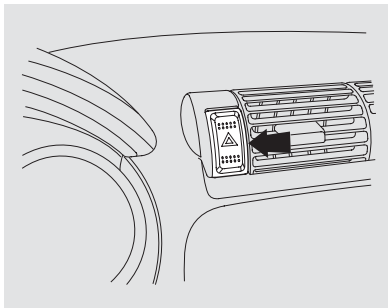






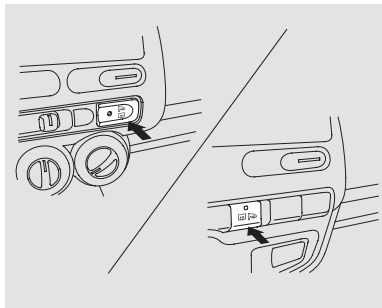
## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

### Hazard Warning



Push the red button to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all outside turn signals and indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use these lights to give a warning to other road users that your vehicle is causing a hazard.

### Rear Window Demister



The rear window demister will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the demister button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the demister is on.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The demister wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side-to-side.

If you use the demister without the engine running, the battery may run out very quickly.

*For some types*

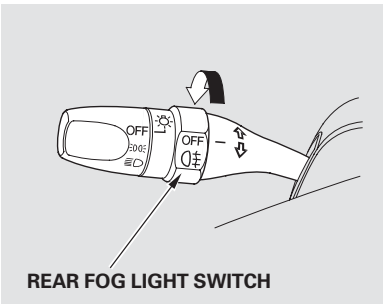
When the demister is on, the mirror demister (see page 138 ) is on, too.





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

### Rear Fog Light (For some types)



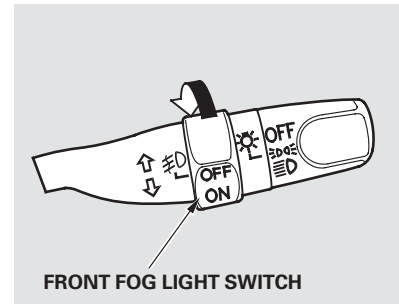
The rear fog light switch is located next to the light control switch. You can use the rear fog light when the headlights are on (the light control switch is in the position).

To operate the rear fog light, turn the switch up from the off (OFF) position. The indicator in the instrument panel comes on to indicate that the rear fog light is on.

The rear fog light will go off when you turn the headlights off. To turn it on again, you have to click the rotary switch again with the headlights on.

The headlights will stay on when you turn the rear fog light off. In this case, make sure the headlights are off when you don't drive.

### Front Fog Light (For some types)



The front fog light switch is located next to the light control switch. You can use the front fog lights when the light control switch is in the or position.

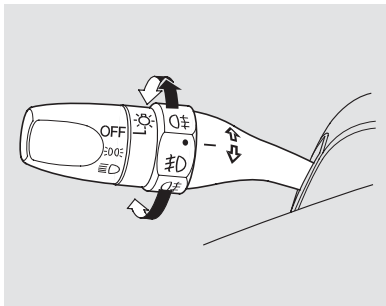
To operate the front fog lights, turn the switch up from the OFF position. The indicator in the instrument panel comes on to indicate that the front fog lights are on.





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

### Front and Rear Fog Lights (For some types)



The fog light switch is located next to the light control switch. You can control the front and rear fog lights with this switch when the light control switch is in the or position.

You can also use the rear fog light when the light control switch is in the position or the front fog lights are turned on.

To turn on the rear fog light only, turn the switch down from the off () position. The indicator in the instrument panel comes on to indicate that the rear fog light is on. You can turn off the rear fog light with the headlights on by turning the switch down again.

To operate the front fog lights, turn the switch up from the off () position to the position. The indicator comes on as a reminder. To turn the rear fog light on with the front fog lights, turn the switch one position up from the position.

You can turn off the rear fog light with the front fog lights on by turning the switch up again.

The rear fog light will go off when you turn the headlights off. The front fog lights go off when the light control switch is turned to the OFF position.

When you turn the light control switch on again, the front fog lights will also turn on. To turn the fog lights completely off, turn the fog light switch down to the off () position.

To turn the rear fog light on again, you have to turn the fog light switch again with the headlights on ( position).

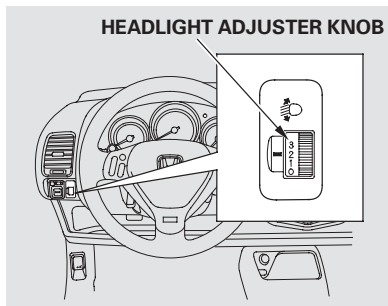
### 108 Instruments and Controls





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel

### Headlight Adjuster (For some types)



The vertical angle of the headlights (low beam) can be adjusted according to the number of persons and the loading weight in the luggage area.

Move the adjusting knob to select an appropriate angle of the headlights.

- 0: A driver or a driver and passenger in the front seat.
- 1: Five persons in the front and rear seats.
- 2: Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible vehicle weight.
- 3: A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight.

### Steering Wheel Adjustment

See page 20 for important safety information about how to properly position the steering wheel.

Make any steering wheel adjustment before you start driving.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.**

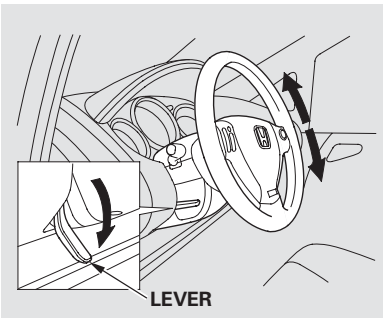
**Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.**

CONTINUED





## Controls Near the Steering Wheel, Keys and Locks



To adjust the steering wheel upward or downward:

1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the desired position, making sure the wheel points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and the indicators.

3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in that position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up and down.

### Keys

Two ignition keys come with your vehicle. You should keep one of them in a safe place, away from the vehicle, as a spare.

They fit all the locks on your vehicle:

- Ignition
- Door(s)
- Tailgate (for some types)

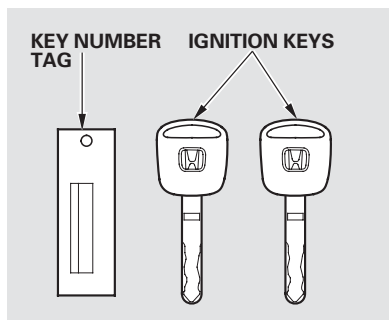


### 110 Instruments and Controls

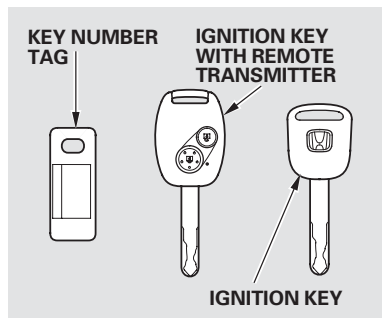
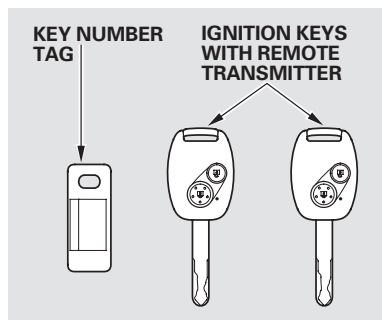




## Keys and Locks



You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Keep the tag stored in a safe place. If you need to replace a key, use only Honda-approved key blanks.



(On vehicles with immobilizer system)  
These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the Immobilizer System. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

### **Remote Transmitter**

On some types, your vehicle also comes with one or two remote transmitters depending on models; see page 117 for an explanation of the operation.





## Keys and Locks

---

### Immobilizer System (For some types)

The Immobilizer System protects your vehicle from theft. A properly-coded ignition key must be used in the ignition switch for the engine to start. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go out. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object is near the ignition switch when you insert the key. To make sure the system

recognizes the key code:

- Do not keep other immobilizer keys on the same key ring.
- Use a plastic or leather key fob, not metal.
- Keep other keys away from your vehicle's key and the ignition switch while trying to start the engine.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

The immobilizer system indicator will also blink several times when you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make

your vehicle undriveable.

If you have lost your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

(EU models)  
EC Directives

This immobilizer system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.

**C E0891**



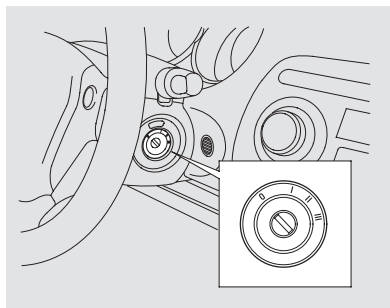
### 112 Instruments and Controls





## Keys and Locks

### Ignition Switch



The ignition switch is on the right side of the steering column. It has four positions:

- LOCK (L)
- ACCESSORY (A)
- ON (O)
- START (S)

**LOCK (L)** – You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To switch from the ACCESSORY (A) to the LOCK (L) position, you must push the key in slightly as you turn it. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission (CVT), the shift lever must also be in Park. The anti-theft lock will lock the steering column when you remove the key.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may sometimes make it difficult to turn the key from the LOCK (L) to the ACCESSORY (A) position. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or to the right as you turn the key.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**

**Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.**

**ACCESSORY (A)** – In this position, you can operate the audio system (on some types), the cigarette lighter and the accessory power socket.

**ON (O)** – This is the normal key position when driving. All features and accessories on the vehicle are usable. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (A) to the ON (O) position. *CONTINUED*







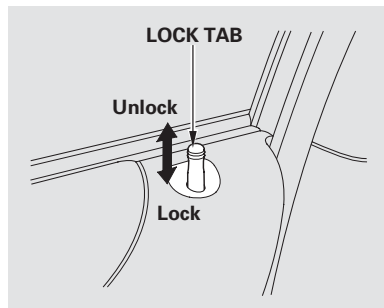
## Keys and Locks

**START (III)** – Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the key.

The engine will not start if the immobilizer system does not recognize the key's coding (see page 112).

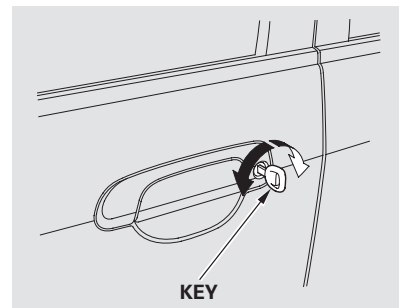
On some types, you will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

### Door Locks



Each door has a lock tab on the top. Push the tab down to lock the door and pull it up to unlock.

To lock any passenger's door when getting out of the vehicle, push the lock tab down and close the door. To lock the driver's door, pull the outside door handle and push the lock tab down. Release the handle, then close the door.



The front doors can be locked and unlocked from the outside with the key.

## 114 Instruments and Controls





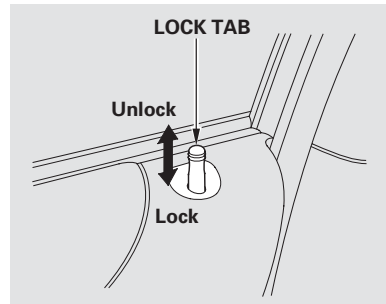
## Keys and Locks

### Power Door Locks (For some types)

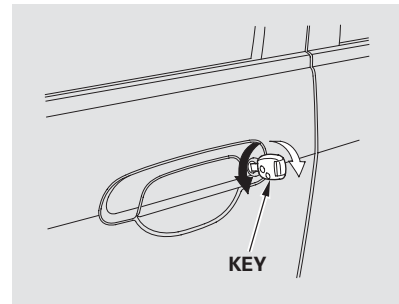


The driver's door has a master door lock button. Push the master door lock button to lock all doors and the tailgate. Push the button again to unlock them.

### (For some types)



Each door has a lock tab on the top. When you push down or pull up the lock tab on the driver's door, all doors and the tailgate lock or unlock. The lock tab on each passenger's door only locks and unlocks that door.



The front doors can be locked and unlocked from the outside with the key. All doors and the tailgate lock or unlock when you use the key to lock or unlock the driver's door.

*CONTINUED*



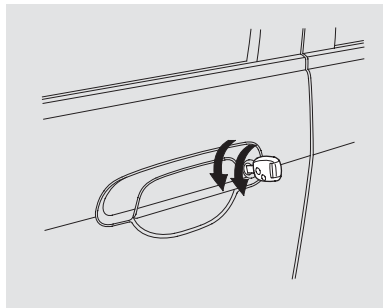


## Keys and Locks

### **Lockout Prevention**

If you forget and leave the key in the ignition switch, Lockout Prevention will not allow you to lock the driver's door. With the driver's door open and the key in the ignition, the master door lock switch (on some types) is disabled. However, if the driver's door is not open, the master door lock switch is not disabled. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pushing down the lock tab, the tabs on all doors pop out. Pushing down the lock tab on the front passenger's door only locks that door.

### **Super Locking** (For some types)



The super locking helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. To set the super locking, turn the key towards the front of the vehicle twice within 5 seconds.

You can also set the super locking with the tailgate lock. Turn the key twice to lock within 5 seconds.

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet, any window or the sunroof is open.

With the super locking set, the master door lock switch on the driver's door and the lock tabs on all doors are disabled.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the door from the inside.**

**Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.**



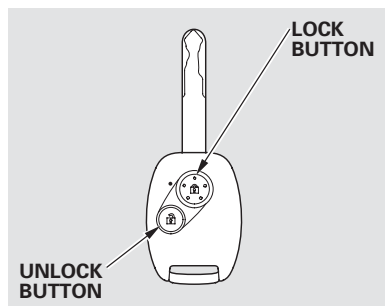


## Keys and Locks

On some types, you can set the super locking with the remote transmitter. To set it, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds (see page 118).

To reset the super locking, unlock the driver's door or the tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter.

### Remote Transmitter (For some types)



You can lock and unlock your vehicle with the remote transmitter. When you push the LOCK button, all doors and the tailgate lock.

When you push the LOCK button on the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked.

When you push the UNLOCK button, all doors and the tailgate unlock. All outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash once each time you push the button.

*CONTINUED*





## Keys and Locks

The ceiling light (if the ceiling light switch is in the centre position) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any door or the tailgate, the light will fade out in about 30 seconds. If you relock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the light will go off immediately.

If you unlock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter, but do not open any door or the tailgate within 30 seconds, all doors and the tailgate automatically relock.

You cannot lock or unlock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed or the key is in the ignition switch.

### **Super Locking** *(For some types)*

The super locking helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. To set the super locking, push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds.

The super locking will not set if any door or the tailgate is not fully closed. It will be set even if the bonnet, any window or the sunroof is open.

To reset the super locking, push the UNLOCK button on the remote transmitter, or unlock the driver's door with the key.

See page 116 for information on the super locking.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**If there are persons inside the vehicle with the super locking set, they cannot unlock the door from the inside.**

**Make sure there is no person inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.**



## 118 Instruments and Controls



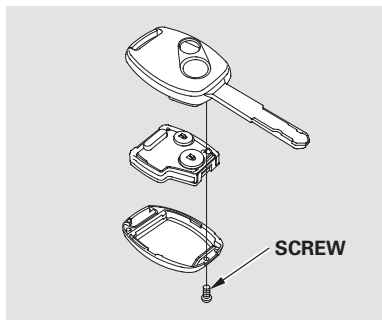


## Keys and Locks

### **Replacing the Battery**

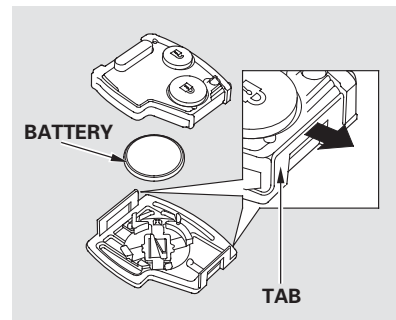
When the remote transmitter's battery begins to get weak, it may take several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors and tailgate, and the LED will not light. Replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616



To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Separate the transmitter by prying its middle seam with your fingernail.



3. Inside the transmitter, separate the inner cover from the keypad by releasing the two tabs on the cover.






## Keys and Locks

---

- Remove the old battery from the back of the inner cover, and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (+ side facing down), then insert it into the back of the cover.

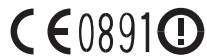
 This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

- Install the parts in reverse order.

(EU models)  
EC Directives  
This keyless entry system complies with the R & TTE (Radio equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity) Directives.



### **Transmitter Care**

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

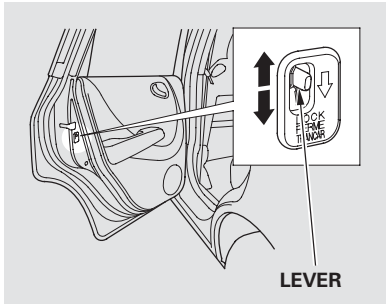
## 120 Instruments and Controls





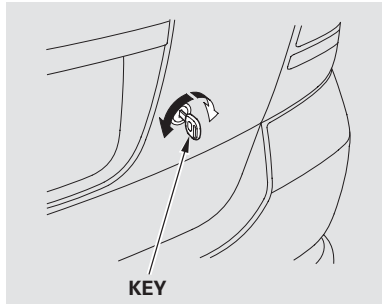
## Keys and Locks

### Childproof Door Locks



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, pull the lock tab up and use the outside door handle.

### Tailgate



For some types  
Use the key to lock or unlock the tailgate lock.

*For some types*

The tailgate will also lock or unlock when you lock or unlock the driver's door by using the lock tab, the key, or the master door lock switch.

On vehicles with remote transmitters, the tailgate will also lock or unlock when you lock or unlock the doors with the transmitter.

When you lock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter, all outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel flash three times to verify the doors and the tailgate are locked. When you unlock them, the lights flash once.

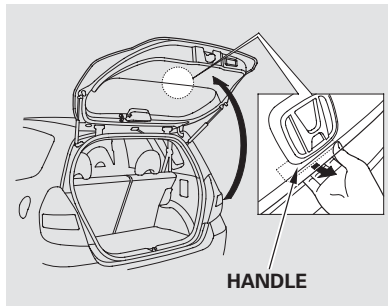
CONTINUED



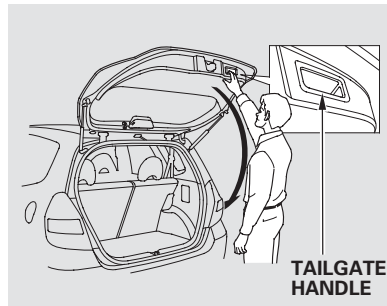




## Keys and Locks

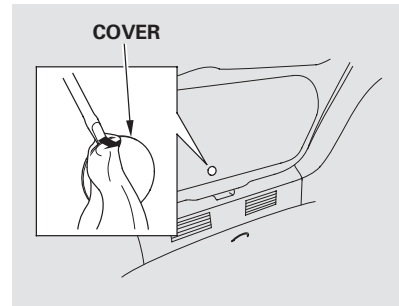


To open the tailgate, pull the handle, then lift up the tailgate.



To close the tailgate, hold the tailgate handle and lower the tailgate, then press down on the back edge.

See page 241 for the information on luggage loading. Keep the tailgate closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 79 .



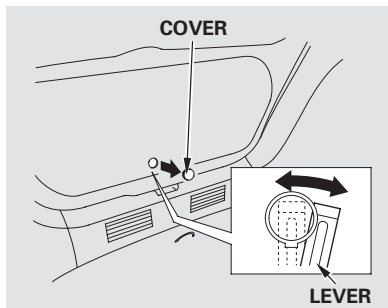
***On vehicles with remote transmitter***  
If the power door lock system cannot unlock the tailgate, unlock it manually.

1. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover, then use a small flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.





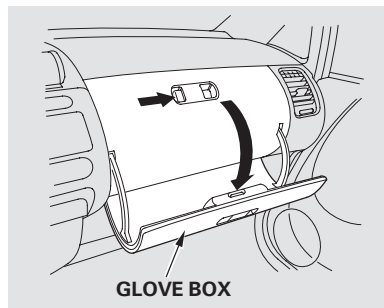
## Keys and Locks



2. Turn the inside lever right to unlock the tailgate.

If you need to unlock the tailgate manually, it means there is a problem with the tailgate. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.

### Glove Box



Open the glove box by pushing the handle. Close it with a firm push.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.**

**Always keep the glove box closed while driving.**



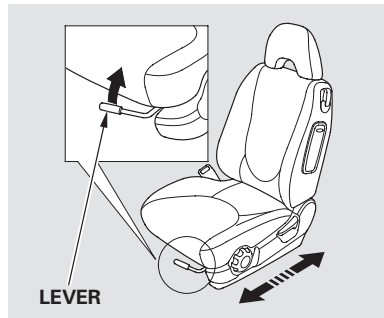


## Seats

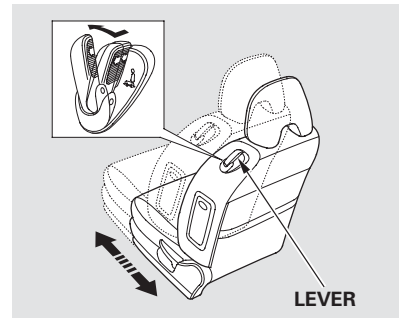
### Front Seat Adjustments

See pages 15 – 17 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.



To adjust the seat forward and backward, pull up on the lever under the seat cushion's front edge. Move the seat to the desired position and release the lever. Try to move the seat to make sure it is locked in position.

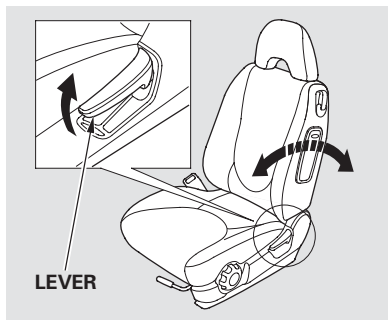


On some types, the seat can also be adjusted forward and backward using the lever on the side of the seat-back. Pull out the lever and push it forward holding the seat-back with your hand. Move the seat to the desired position and check the seat to make sure it is locked in position.



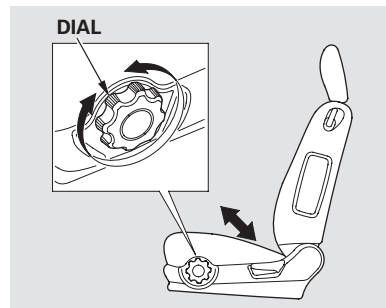


## Seats



To change the angle of the seat-back, pull up on the lever on the outside of the seat bottom. Move the seat-back to the desired position and release the lever. Let the seat-back latch into the new position.

### Driver's Seat Height Adjustment



See pages 15 – 17 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

The height of your driver's seat is adjustable. Turn the front dial on the outside of the seat cushion to change the height. Make all adjustments before you start driving.

### Head Restraints

See page 17 for important safety information and a warning about how to properly position the head restraints.

Your vehicle has adjustable head restraints on the front seats. The rear seat also has head restraints on the outside positions, but they are not adjustable.

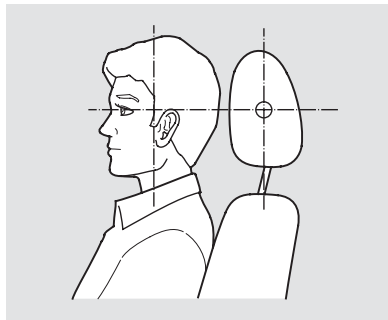
The head restraints help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries.

CONTINUED

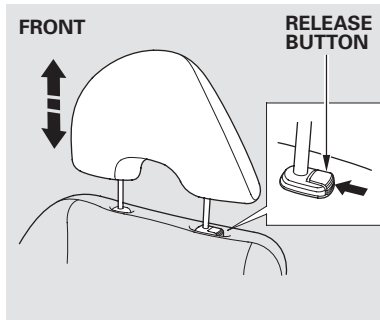




## Seats

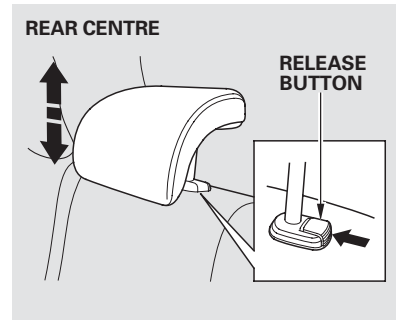


They are most effective when you adjust them so the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. A taller person should adjust the restraint as high as possible.



The front head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways and push the restraint down.

To remove the front or rear outside head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button and pull the restraint out of the seat-back.



*On vehicles with rear centre head restraint*

The rear centre head restraint adjusts for height. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways and push the restraint down.





## Seats

To remove the rear centre head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button and pull the restraint out of the seat-back.

Always replace the rear head restraints when the seat-backs are returned to upright position.

### **⚠ WARNING**


**Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.**

**Always replace the head restraints before driving.**

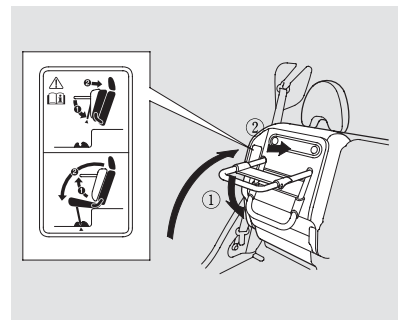
### **Folding the Rear Seats**

The left and right rear seat cushions can be lifted up separately.

Make sure there are no items on the floor before folding down the seats.

 This label on the back of rear seats guides you to refer to the Owner's Manual for correct operation.

*Only on vehicles equipped with lap belt*  
When lifting the rear seat cushion up, store the lap belt in the pocket in the rear seat back (see page 129).



Lift the rear seat cushion up and fold the leg down. Push the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

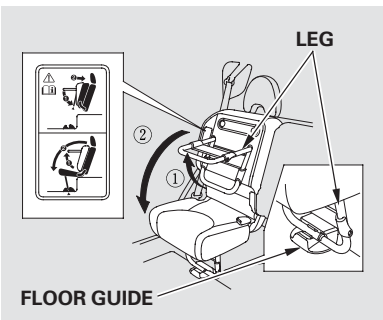
CONTINUED

Instruments and Controls **127**





## Seats

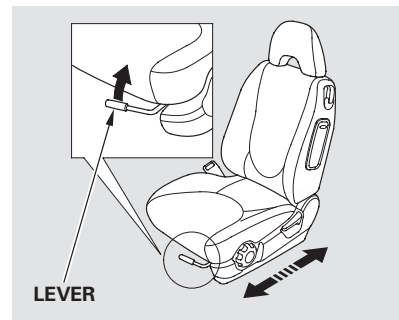


### Create the Luggage Space

For greater luggage capacity, the rear seat can be folded down.

Make sure there are no items on the floor before folding down the seats.

The left and right halves of the rear seat can be folded up separately.



Before folding down the rear seat-back, move the front seat to the forward most position (see page 124).

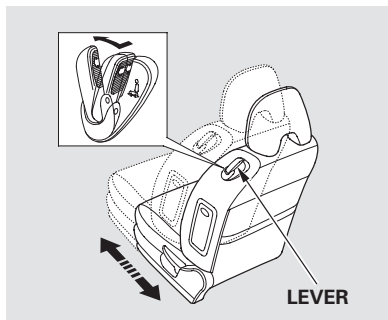
To return the seat cushion to its original position, unfold the legs and lower it slowly holding the seat cushion with your hands. Set the legs in the floor guides and make sure they are securely locked into place.

## 128 Instruments and Controls



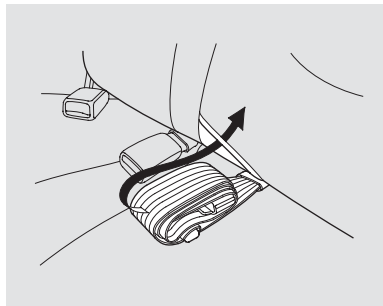


## Seats

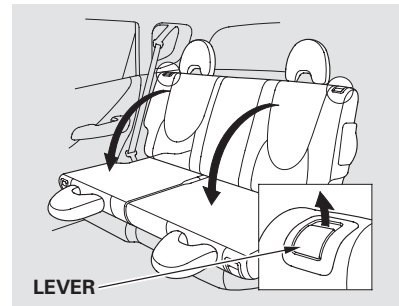


On some types, the seat can also be adjusted forward and backward using the lever on the side of the seat-back. Pull out the lever and push it forward holding the seat-back with your hand. Move the seat to the forward most position and check the seat to make sure it is locked in position.

**(For some types)**



When folding the rear seat, store the belt in the pocket in the rear seat-back.



Pull the release lever up to unlatch the seat-back. Move the seat belt out of the way and fold the seat-back down holding it with your hands.

Before returning the rear seat-back to the upright position, move the front seat to the forward most position.

*CONTINUED*

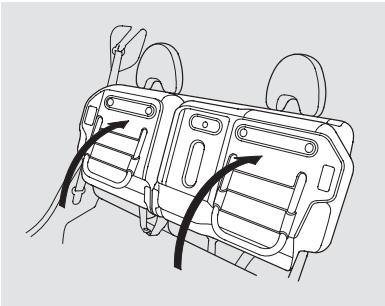




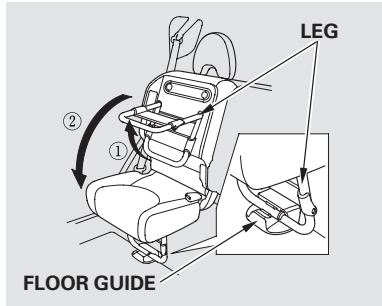


## Seats

---



To lock the seat-back upright, lift the seat-back and the seat bottom up, push them firmly against the latch. Tug on the seat-back to ensure that it is latched.



To return the seat cushion to its original position, unfold the legs and lower it slowly holding the seat cushion with your hands. Set the legs in the floor guides and make sure they are securely locked into place.

Adjust the front seat position.

### 130 Instruments and Controls





## Seats

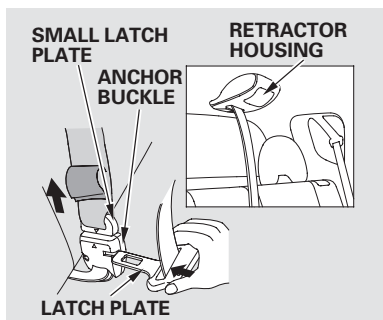
### Detachable Anchor (For some types)

The seat belt in the rear centre seat is equipped with a detachable anchor. This allows the centre seat belt to be unlatched when the right side of the rear seat is folded.

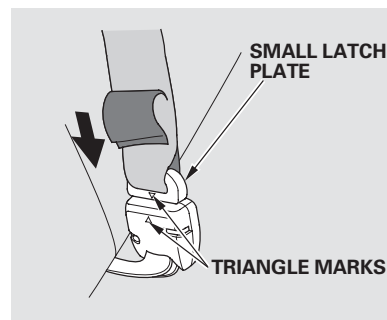
#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.**



To unlatch the detachable anchor before folding the seat-back, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle and allow the seat belt to retract. Store the small latch plate and seat belt latch plate in the retractor housing.

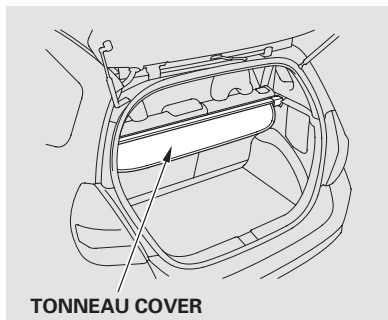


When the seat-back is returned to its upright position, be sure to latch the detachable anchor by lining up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle, then insert the plate into the buckle. Tug on the seat belt to verify that the detachable anchor is securely latched. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

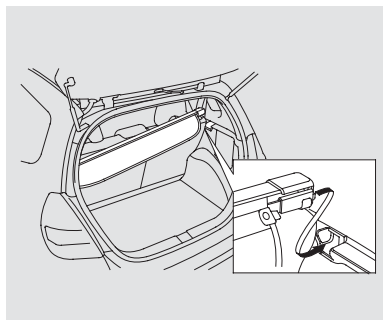




## Tonneau Cover (For some types)

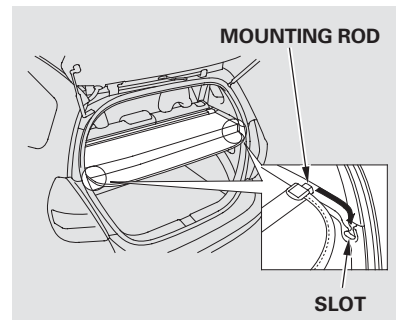


1. Release the left side of the tonneau cover by pushing the left edge of the unit toward the right edge and lifting it up.
2. Refer to page 127 for the folding of the rear seat.



3. To use the tonneau cover, place the left edge into the holder and push the edge inward and push the right edge down into its holder until it locks into place.

Make sure it is securely latched so it will not come loose while you are driving.



To extend the rear side tonneau cover, pull the cover's leading edge out of its housing and set the mounting rods in the slots at both sides of the tailgate opening.

### 132 Instruments and Controls





## Tonneau Cover (For some types)

To retract the cover, release the rods from the slots and guide the cover so it rolls back fully into its housing.

Do not store parcels on the tonneau cover. The tonneau cover may break if weight is placed on it.

The tonneau cover may be removed to give you more luggage space.

Reverse the installation procedure to store the tonneau cover.





## Power Windows (For some types)

All four windows (on some types, two front windows) are electrically-powered. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window.

Each door has a switch that controls its window. To open the window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Close the window by pulling back on the switch and holding it. The rear door windows open only halfway.



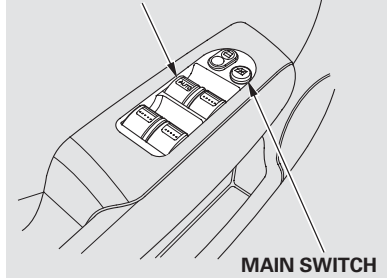
### **⚠ WARNING**

**Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.**

**Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.**

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

### DRIVER'S WINDOW SWITCH



The driver's door armrest has a master power window control panel. To open any of the passenger's windows, push down on the appropriate switch and hold it until the window reaches the desired position. To close the window, pull back on the window switch. Release the switch when the window gets to the position you want.



## 134 Instruments and Controls





## Power Windows (For some types)

The master control panel also contains these extra features:

**AUTO** — To open and, on some types, also to close the driver's window fully, push down or pull back on the window switch firmly and release it. The window automatically goes all the way up or down. To stop the window from going all the way, pull back on the window switch if it is opening or push down if it is closing. To open or close the driver's window only partially, push down or pull back on the window switch lightly and hold it. The window will stop as soon as you release the switch.

The MAIN switch controls power to the passengers' windows. When you push in the MAIN switch, the passengers' windows cannot be raised or lowered. The MAIN switch does not affect the driver's window. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again to get it to pop out. Keep the MAIN switch pushed in when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

The lights inside the switches come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

### **Auto Reverse**

*On vehicles with driver's window auto feature*

If the driver's window senses any obstacle while it is closing with the AUTO feature, the window will stop and then automatically begin to lower itself.

Even with this feature, you should still check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it. This feature is not functional when the window is very close to the fully raised position.

CONTINUED





## Power Windows (For some types), Sunroof

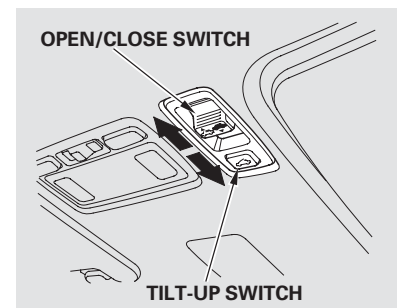
Any impact due to road conditions may cause the auto reverse function to work unexpectedly on the closing window. If it happens frequently, there is a problem with your power window system. You should have your vehicle inspected by your dealer. You can still close the window by pulling back on the window switch lightly and holding it.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the driver's window fuse is removed, the AUTO feature of the driver's window will be disabled. The power window system needs to be reset after reconnecting the battery or installing the fuse. You should do the following.

1. Start the engine. Push down on the driver's window switch until the window is fully open.
2. Pull back on the driver's window switch to close the window completely and hold the switch for a further second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.

### Sunroof (For some types)



There are two switches on the ceiling near the front ceiling light. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position. To open the sunroof, pull the OPEN/CLOSE switch backward. Push the switch forward to close it. When you push the TILT-UP switch, rear of the sunroof will tilt up. To tilt it down, push the OPEN/CLOSE switch forward.





## Sunroof, Mirrors

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.**

**Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.**

(For some types)

If you push and hold the sunroof switch to close the sunroof fully, the sunroof automatically stops at a preset position. Release the switch once, and push it forward again to close the sunroof completely.

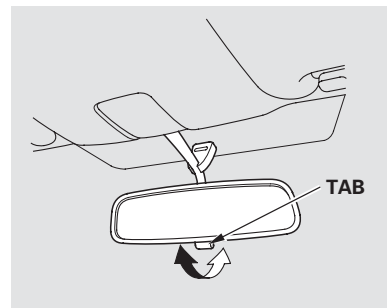
**WARNING:** *Extending the head, arms or other parts of the body through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving can cause serious injury or death.*

### **NOTICE**

If you try to open the sunroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

**WARNING:** *Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).*

### **Mirrors**



Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.

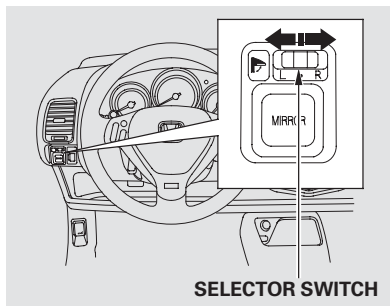






## Mirrors

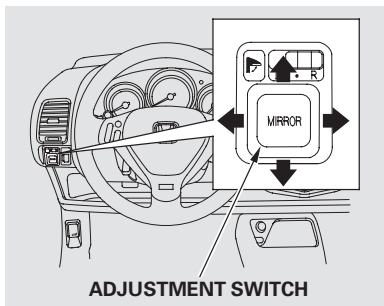
### Adjusting the Power Mirrors (For some types)



**SELECTOR SWITCH**

Adjust the outside mirrors with the adjustment switch on the driver's side of the dashboard:

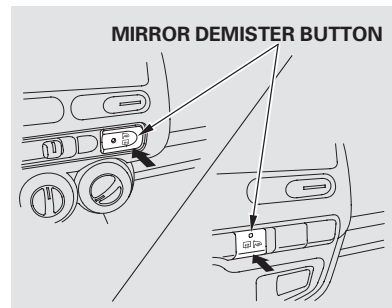
1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (left side) or R (right side).



**ADJUSTMENT SWITCH**

3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the centre (off) position. This turns off the adjustment switch so you can't move a mirror out of position by accidentally bumping the switch.

### Heated Door Mirrors



On some types, the outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. Press the demister button to turn on the heaters when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. The light in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off.

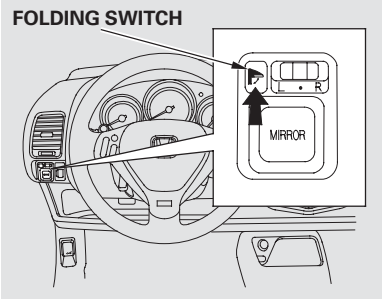
When the demister is on, the rear window demister (see page 106) is on, too.





## Mirrors, Sun Visor

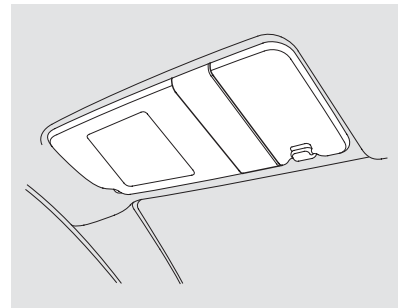
### Folding Door Mirrors (For some types)



Door mirrors can be folded by the folding switch next to the selector switch, which enables you to park your vehicle in a limited parking space easily. Make sure to fold out the mirrors before you start driving. With the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, press the folding switch to fold up both outside mirrors simultaneously. To fold out, press the switch again.

Never drive your vehicle with the outside mirrors folded.

### Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. You can also use the sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip and swing the sun visor toward the side window.

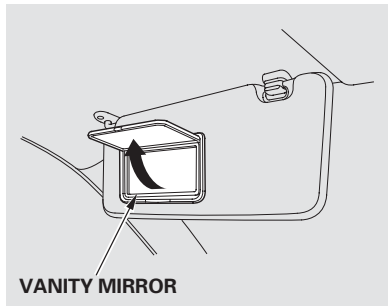
Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.





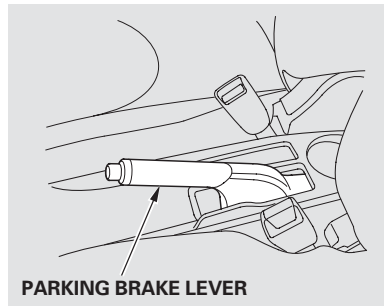
## Vanity Mirror, Parking Brake

### Vanity Mirror



To use a vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

### Parking Brake



To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 95 ).

### NOTICE

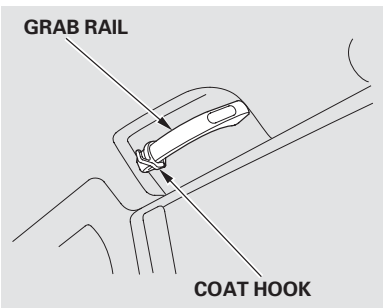
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and axles.





## Coat Hook, Beverage Holder

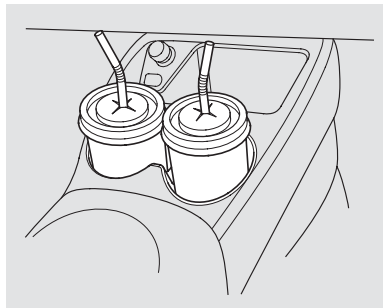
### Coat Hook (For some types)



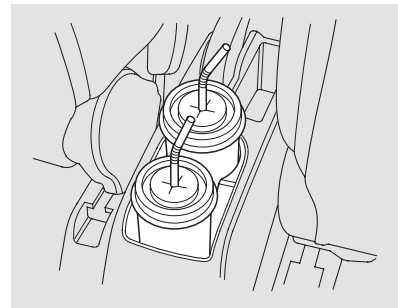
The rear seat grab rails can also be used as coat hook.

This hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

### Beverage Holder



Be careful when you are using the beverage holder. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Spilled liquids can also damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.



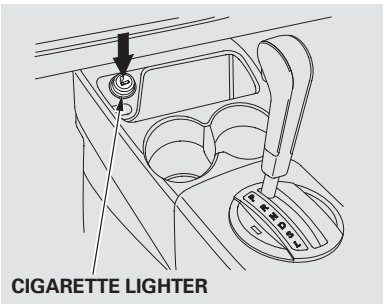
The beverage holders for the rear passengers are located on the upper-rear section of the centre console.





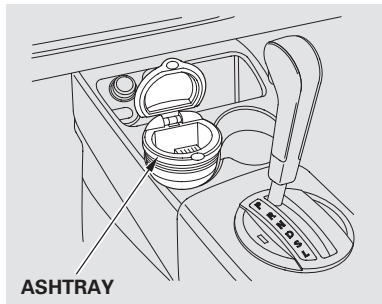
## Cigarette Lighter, Ashtray

### Cigarette Lighter (For some types)



The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position for the cigarette lighter to work. To heat up the lighter, push it in. It will pop out when it is ready for use. Do not hold the lighter in while it is heating up, you could cause it to overheat.

### Ashtray (For some types)



To use the front ashtray, swing the lid open. To remove it, pull it straight up with lid closed.

### NOTICE

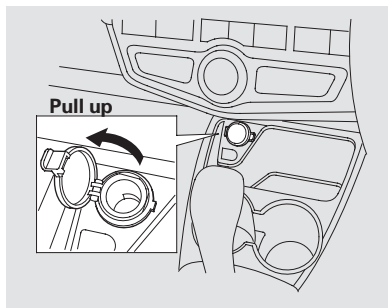
Use the ashtray only for cigarettes, cigars, and other smoking materials. To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, don't put paper or other things that can burn in the ashtray.





## Accessory Power Socket

### Accessory Power Socket (For some types)



To use the accessory power socket, pull the cover up. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

This socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

It will not power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

It is recommended that only genuine Honda Accessories are used for this socket. Improper accessories may cause problems.

If used without the engine running, the battery may run out very quickly.

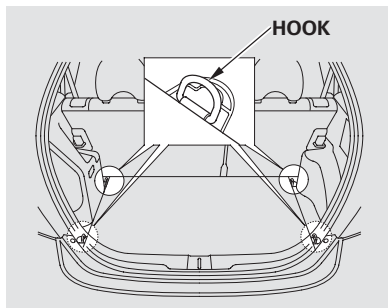
Always put the cover on when not in use in order to prevent objects entering into the socket.





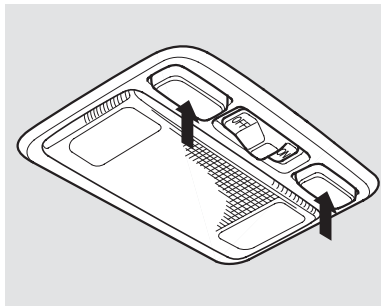
## Luggage Hooks, Interior Lights

### Luggage Hooks



The hooks on the floor of the luggage area enable you to tie down items stored in the back. Make sure all stored items are secured before driving.

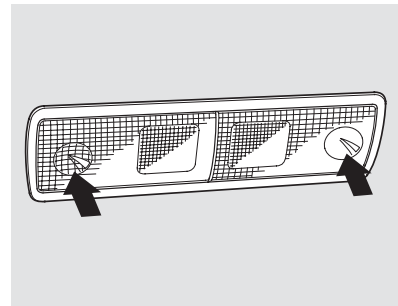
### Spotlights (For some types)



The front ceiling light also contains two spotlights.

Turn on the spotlight by pushing the button next to each light. Push the button again to turn it off. You can use the spotlights at all times.

### Individual Map Lights (For some types)



Turn on each individual map light by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off. You can use the individual map lights at all times.

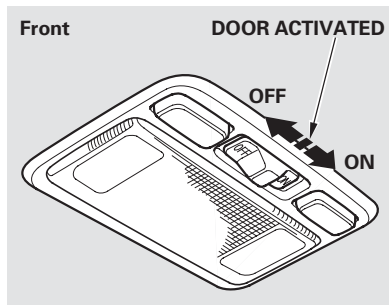
## 144 Instruments and Controls



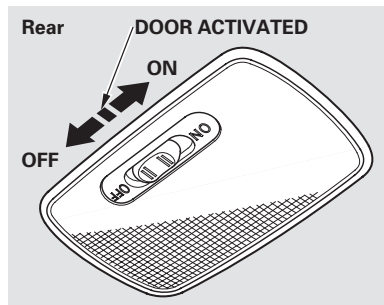


## Interior Lights

### Ceiling Light



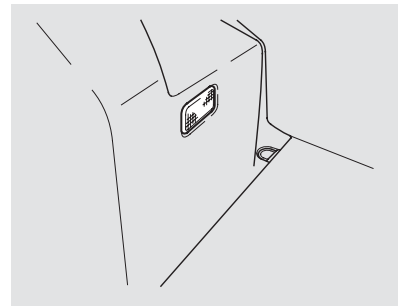
Each ceiling light has a three-position switch. In the OFF position, the light does not come on. In the centre position, the ceiling light comes on when you open any door. After all doors are closed tightly, the light goes out. On some types, the light fades out in about six seconds. In the ON position, the ceiling light stays on continuously.



The front and rear ceiling lights (with each switch in the centre position) come on when you unlock the door with the key or the remote transmitter (see page 117).

The ceiling lights (with each switch in the centre position) will also come on when you remove the key from the ignition switch. If you do not open a door, the lights stay on, then fade out in about 30 seconds.

### Luggage Area Light



The luggage area light comes on when you open the tailgate.







07/09/12 09:30:04 32SAA650\_149





## Comfort and Convenience Features

The heating and air conditioning\* systems in your vehicle provide a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

\*Air conditioning is standard on some models.

The audio system that is standard equipment on some models has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them. (If you selected an optional audio system, refer to the operating instructions that came with it.)

Heating and Cooling .....	148
What Each Control Does.....	148
How to Use the System.....	152
To Turn Everything Off .....	156
Climate Control System.....	157
Fully-automatic Operation.....	160
Semi-automatic Operation.....	161
Sunlight Sensor/Temperature Sensor .....	166
Audio System .....	167
Audio System (A type).....	169
Audio System (B type).....	180
Audio System (C type).....	197
Audio System (D type) .....	214
Protecting Compact Discs .....	225
Remote Audio Controls .....	226
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	227





## Heating and Cooling

Proper use of the heating and cooling system can make the interior dry and comfortable, and keep the windows clear for the best visibility.

If your vehicle does not have air conditioning, it can be installed at any time. Your dealer can install a genuine Honda air conditioning system that meets Honda's high quality standards and is designed to exactly fit your vehicle. Please contact your dealer for more information.

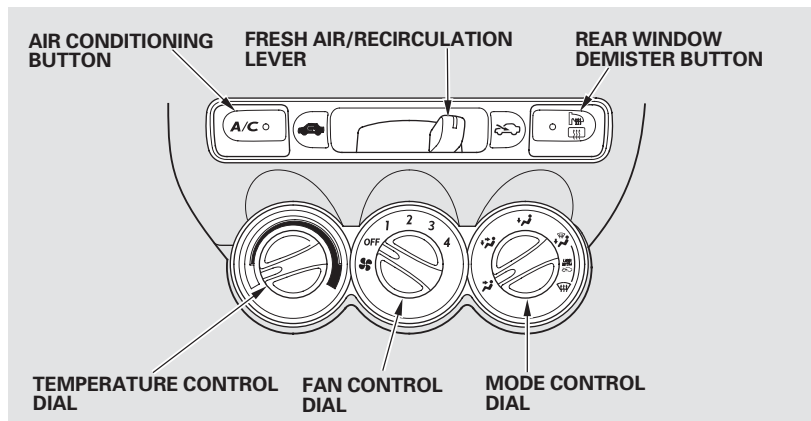
### What Each Control Does

#### Fan Control Dial

Turning this dial clockwise increases the fan's speed, which increases air flow.

#### Temperature Control Dials

Turning this dial clockwise increases the temperature of the air flow.



#### Air Conditioning (A/C) Button (For some types)

This button turns the air conditioning ON and OFF. The indicator in the button lights when the A/C is on.

#### Rear Window Demister Button

This button turns the rear window demister on and off (see page 106).



### 148 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Heating and Cooling


### Fresh Air/Recirculation Lever

This lever controls the source of the air going into the system. When you select the  side, air is brought in from outside the vehicle (Fresh Air mode). When you select the  side, air from the vehicle's interior is sent through the system again (Recirculation mode).


### Mode Control Dial


This dial lets you select which vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes.





 Air flows from the centre and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Air flow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the floor vents.

 Air flow is divided between the floor vents and the demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

 Air flows from the demister vents at the base of the windscreen.

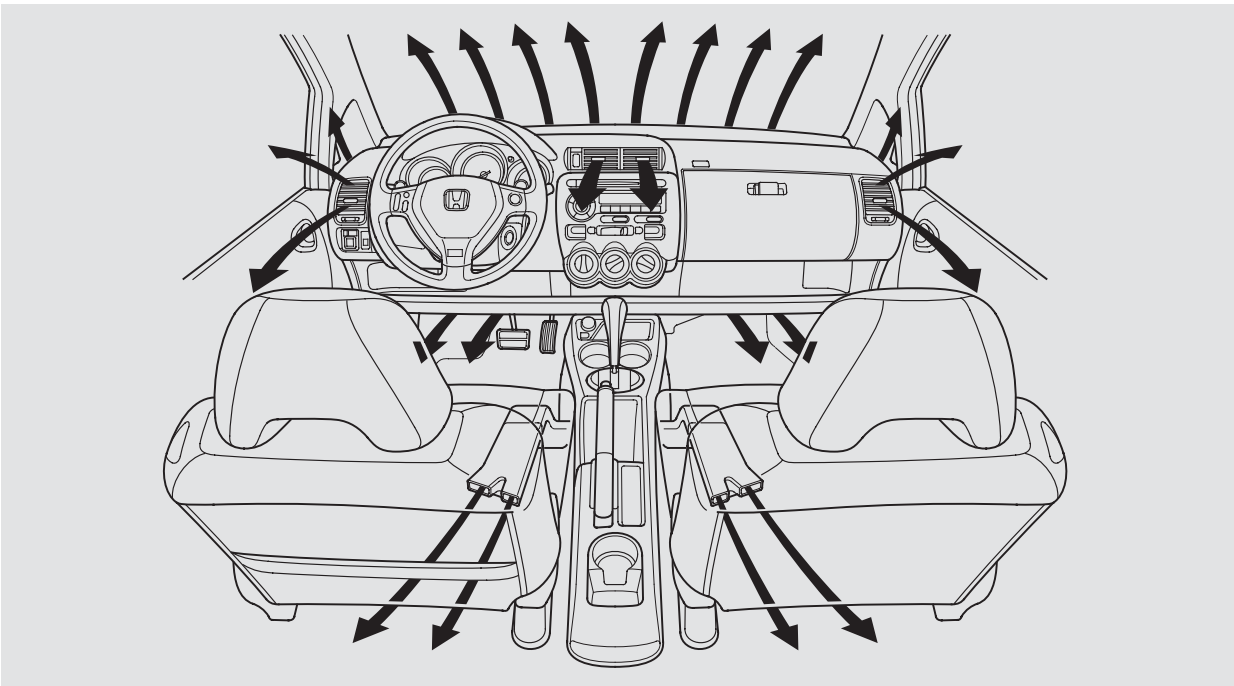
USE WITH  
 When you use  or , set the Fresh Air/Recirculation Lever to the  side.

CONTINUED





## Heating and Cooling



**150** Comfort and Convenience Features



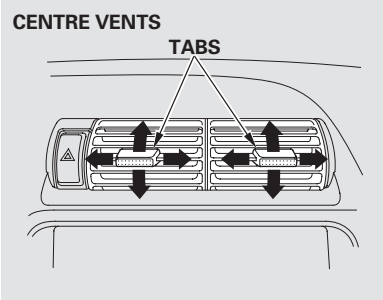


07/09/12 09:30:41 32SAA650\_154



## Heating and Cooling

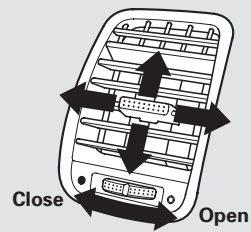
### Vent Controls



The direction of air flow from the vents in the centre and each side of the dashboard is adjustable.

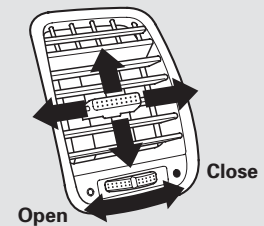
To adjust the air flow from each vent, move the vent up-and-down and side-to-side by the tab.

### DRIVER'S SIDE VENT



The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.

### PASSENGER'S SIDE VENT





## Heating and Cooling

### How to Use the System

This section covers how to set up the system controls for ventilation, heating, cooling, dehumidifying, and defrosting.

The engine must be running for the heater and air conditioning to generate hot and cold air. The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.


The air conditioning does not rely on engine temperature.

It is best to leave the system in Fresh Air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in Recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up. Switch to Recirculation mode when you are driving through smoky or dusty conditions, then switch back to Fresh Air mode when the conditions clear.


The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windshield. Keep these clear of leaves and other debris.

### Ventilation

The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then exhausts it through vents near the tailgate.

1. Turn the temperature control dial all the way to the left.  
Make sure the A/C is off.
2. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
3. Set the fan to the desired speed.

### To Cool with A/C (For some types)

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. The light in the button comes on when a fan speed is selected.
2. Make sure the temperature control dial is all the way to the left.
3. Select .
4. If the outside air is humid, select Recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select Fresh Air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.


## 152 Comfort and Convenience Features



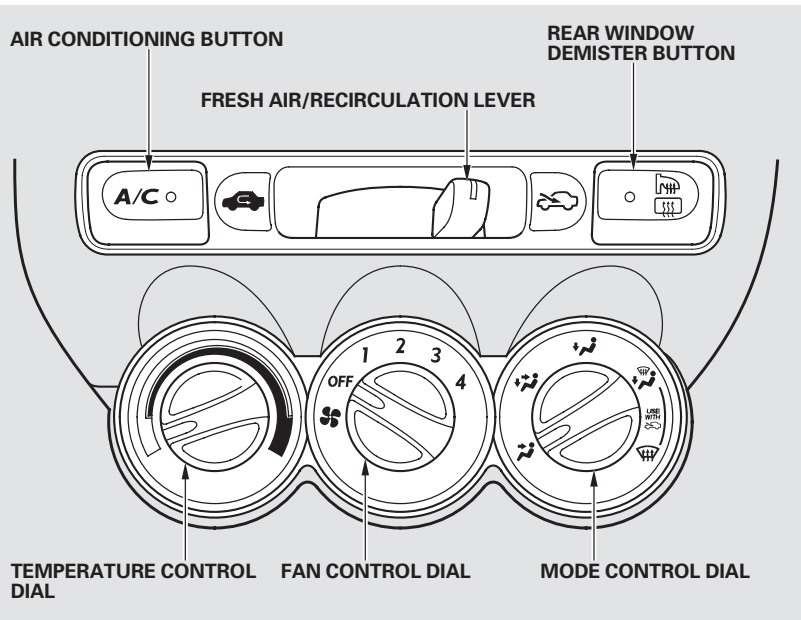


## Heating and Cooling

If the interior is very warm from being parked in the sun, you can cool it down more rapidly by setting up the controls this way:

1. Start the engine.
2. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button. Make sure the temperature control dial is set to maximum cool.
3. Set the fan to maximum speed.
4. Open the windows partially. Select  and Fresh Air mode.

When the interior has cooled down to a more comfortable temperature, close the windows and set the controls as described for normal cooling.



CONTINUED








## Heating and Cooling

Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the High Temperature Indicator (see page 95) when driving in stop-and-go traffic or climbing a long, steep hill. If the indicator begins to blink, turn off the A/C until the indicator goes off.


### **To Heat**

To warm the interior:

1. Start the engine.
2. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
3. Set the fan to the desired speed.
4. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control dial.

### **To Heat and Dehumidify with Air Conditioning (For some types)**


Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry.

1. Switch the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature control dial so the mixture of heated and cooled air feels comfortable.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 0°C (32°F).

### **To Defog and Defrost**

To remove fog from the inside of the windows:


1. Switch the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning (on some types).
3. Select  and Fresh Air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature control dial so the air flow from the defroster vents feels warm.
5. Turn on the rear window demister to help clear the rear window.



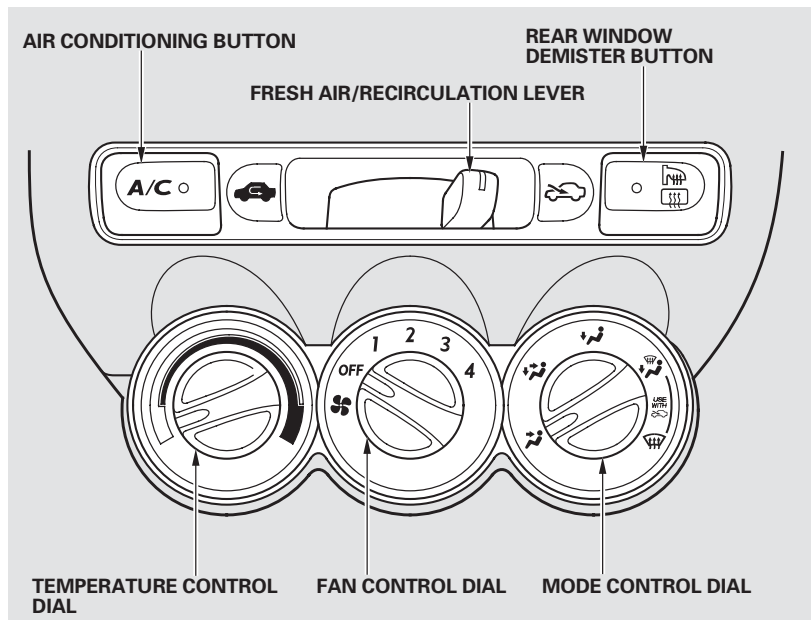


## Heating and Cooling

To remove exterior frost or ice from the windscreen and side windows after the vehicle has been sitting out in cold weather:

1. Start the engine.
2. Select the Fresh Air mode and .
3. Switch the fan and temperature controls to maximum.

To rapidly remove exterior frost or ice from the windscreen (on very cold days), first select the Recirculation mode. Once the windscreen is clear, select the Fresh Air mode to avoid fogging the windows.



CONTINUED





## Heating and Cooling

---

These settings direct all the air flow to the demister vents at the base of the windscreen and the side window demister vents. The air flow will get warmer and clear the windows faster as the engine warms up. You can close the side vents with the dial underneath each vent. This will send more warm air to the windscreen demister vents.

For safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving away.

### To Turn Everything Off

To shut off the system temporarily, turn the fan speed and temperature control dials all the way to the left.

You should shut the system completely off only for the first few minutes of driving in cold weather, until the engine coolant warms up enough to operate the heater. Keep the fan on at all other times so stale air does not build up in the interior.

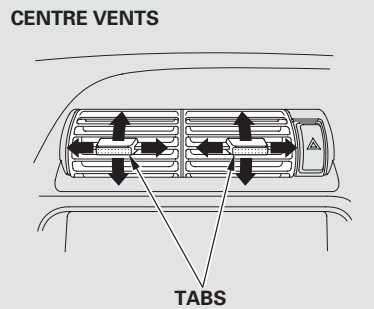




## Climate Control System

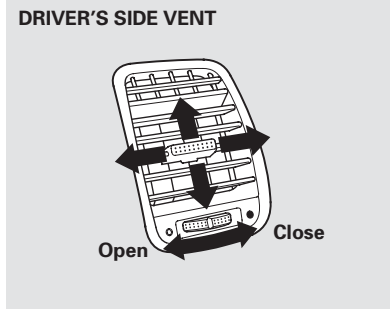
*Only on vehicles with automatic air conditioning system*

The automatic climate control system in your vehicle picks the proper combination of air conditioning, heating, and ventilation to maintain the interior temperature you select. The system also adjusts the fan speed and air flow levels.



The direction of air flow from the vents in the centre and each side of the dashboard is adjustable.

To adjust the air flow from each vent, move the vent up-and-down and side-to-side by the tab.



The vents in the corners of the dashboard can be opened and closed with the dials underneath them.

*CONTINUED*

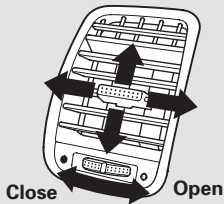




## Climate Control System

---

### PASSENGER'S SIDE VENT



The climate control system draws air through the exterior vents at the bottom of the windscreen. Keep these vents clear of leaves and other debris.

For the climate control system to provide heating and cooling, the engine must be running.

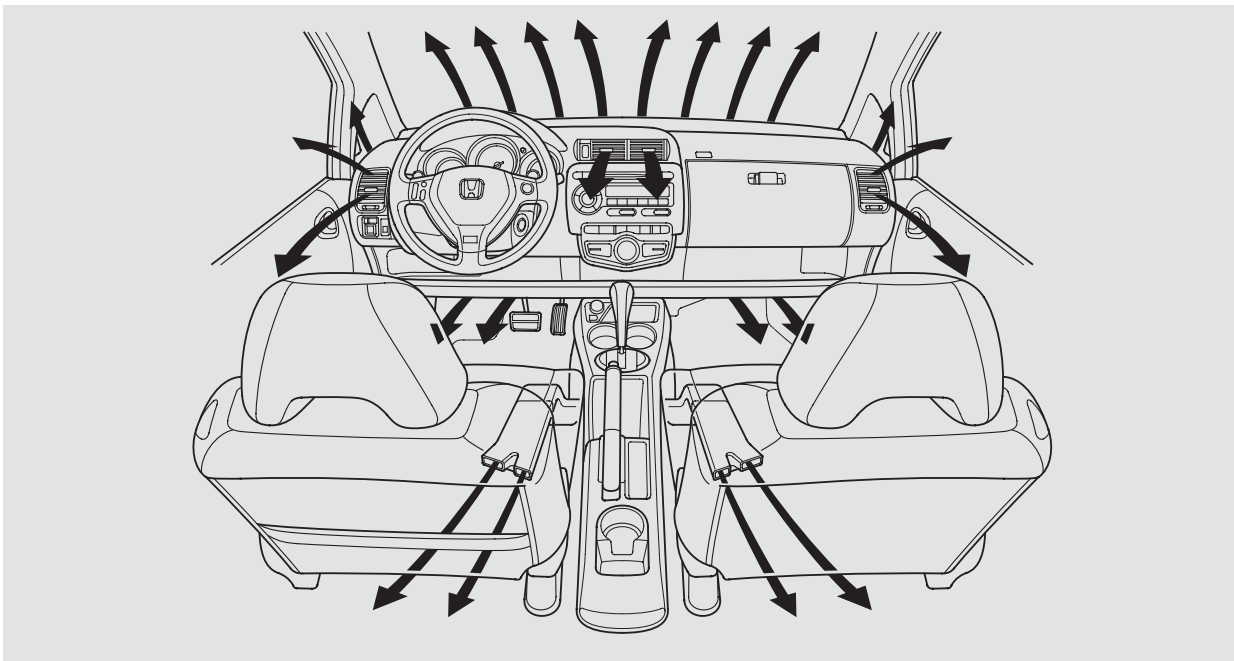




07/09/12 09:31:36 32SAA650\_162



## Climate Control System



Comfort and Convenience Features **159**



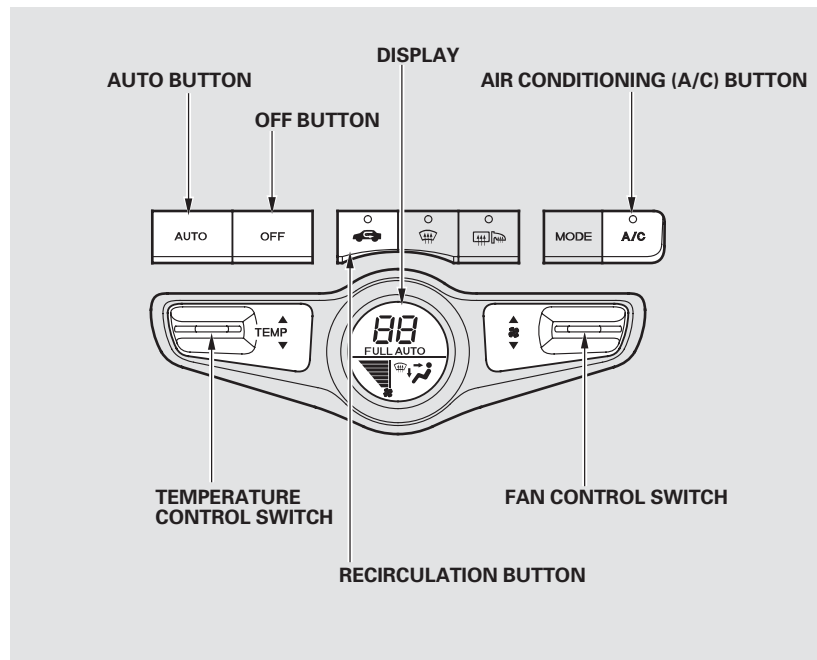


## Climate Control System

### Fully-automatic Operation

To put the Automatic Climate Control in fully-automatic mode, press the AUTO button, then set the desired temperature by pressing the temperature control switch. You will see “FULL AUTO” in the system’s display.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature from its current level to the set temperature.



### 160 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Climate Control System

When you set the temperature to its lower limit “Lo” or its upper limit “Hi”, the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

In cold weather, the fan will not come on automatically until the vehicle has been driven for a short time and the heater starts to develop warm air.

Pressing the OFF button shuts the climate control system completely off. No air flow can cause the windows to fog up. It is recommended that you keep the fan on at all times so stale air and moisture do not build up in the interior and cause fogging.

### Semi-automatic Operation

You can manually select various functions of the Climate Control system when it is in fully-automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the light above the AUTO button to go out.

### Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

Press the A/C button to turn the air conditioning on and off. When the A/C is on, the indicator in the button lights.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the dial below the outside temperature. With the A/C off, use the temperature control switch to adjust the temperature of the air flow to a comfortable setting.

### Recirculation Button

This button controls the source of the air going into the system. When the indicator in this button is lit, the system is recirculating the interior (Recirculation mode). When the indicator is off, air is brought in from outside of the vehicle (Fresh Air mode).

You can, for example, manually put the system in recirculation mode when driving through an area of smoke or fumes.

CONTINUED







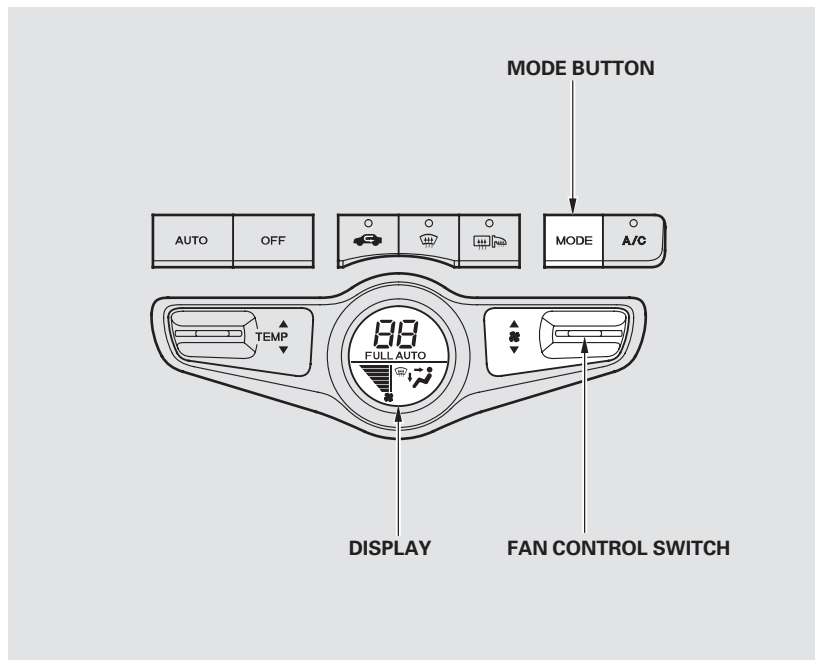
## Climate Control System

### **Fan Control Switch**

You can manually select the fan speed by pressing the fan control switch: ▲ to increase the fan's speed, or ▼ to decrease the fan's speed.

### **Mode Button**

Use the MODE button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner vents in all modes; you can turn it off with the dial below each vent. Each time you press the MODE button, the display shows the mode selected. Press the button four times to see all the modes.




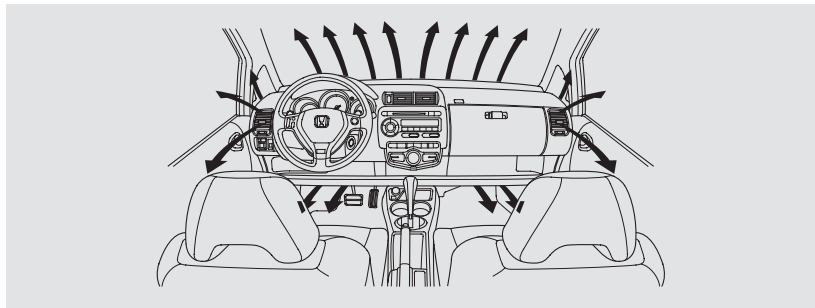
## 162 Comfort and Convenience Features




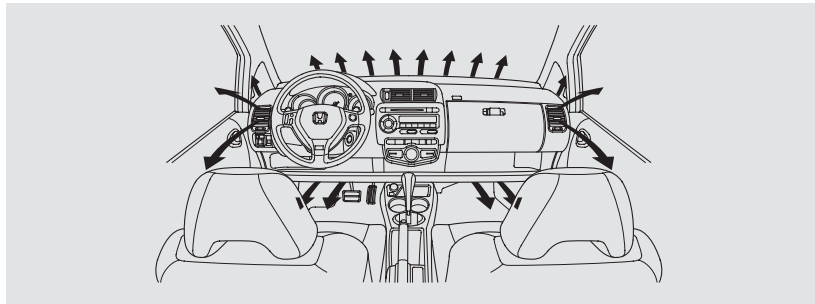


## Climate Control System

 The main air flow is divided between the floor vents and defroster vents at the base of the windscreen.



 The main air flow is directed to the floor vents.




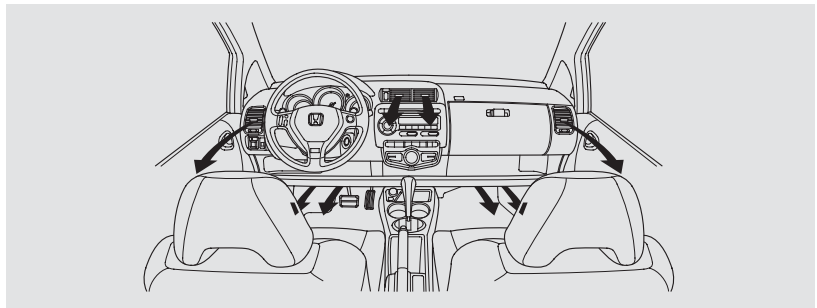
CONTINUED



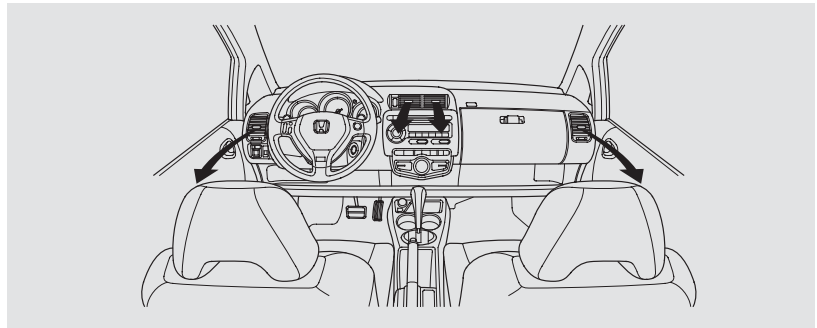


## Climate Control System

 Air flow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.



 The air flow comes out of the dashboard vents.





### 164 Comfort and Convenience Features






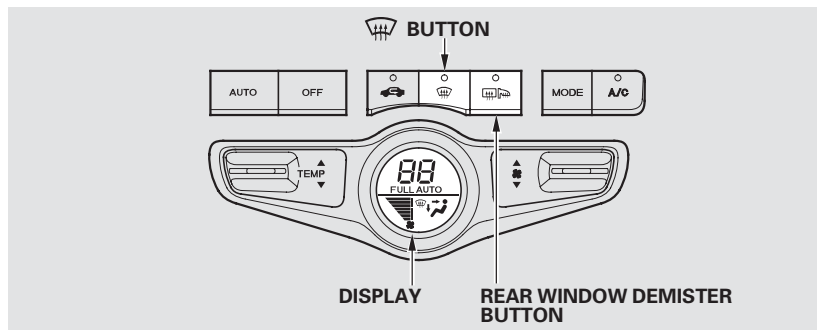
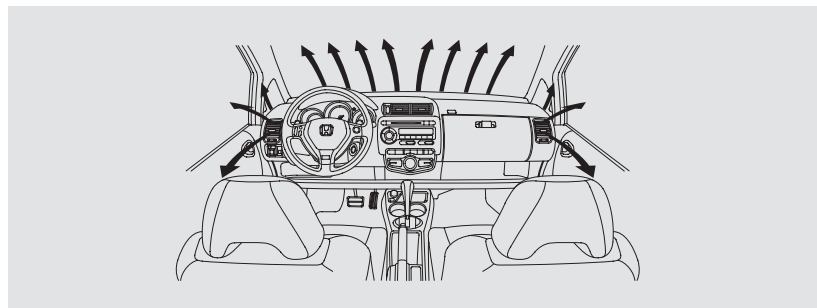
## Climate Control System

The  button directs the main air flow to the windscreen for faster defrosting. It also overrides any MODE selection you may have made.

When you select , the A/C turns on automatically and the system selects Fresh Air mode. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase air flow to the windscreen by closing the side vents in the dashboard.

When you turn off  by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

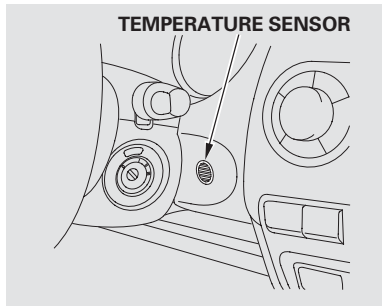
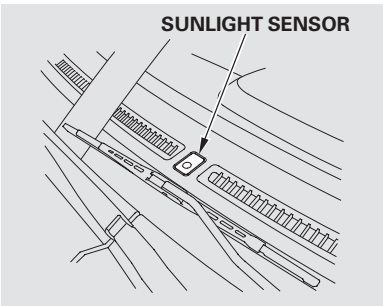
**Rear Window Demister Button**  
This button turns the rear window demister on and off (see page 106).





## Climate Control System

### Sunlight Sensor/Temperature Sensor



To regulate the interior temperature, the system has two sensors. A sunlight sensor is located in the top of the dashboard and a temperature sensor is next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.

### 166 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System

The audio system is in principle available as an option.

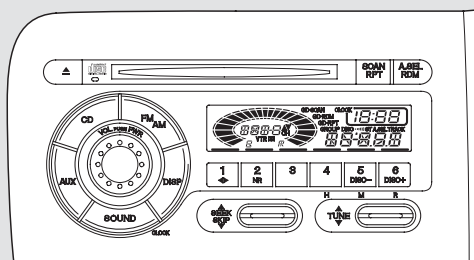
Some models may have one of the audio systems described in this section. Read the appropriate pages in this section for operation of the audio systems installed in your vehicle.

- page 169 to 179 for A type
- page 180 to 196 for B type
- page 197 to 213 for C type
- page 214 to 222 for D type

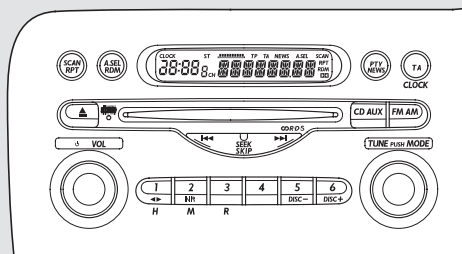
If your vehicle has a different audio system from these types, read the radio manufacturer's manual that came with your vehicle for its operation.

These illustrations are left handle models.

(A Type)



(B Type)



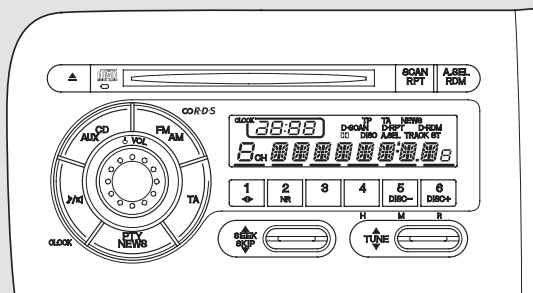
CONTINUED



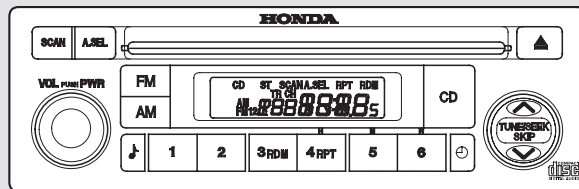


# Audio System

(C Type)



(D Type)



## 168 Comfort and Convenience Features



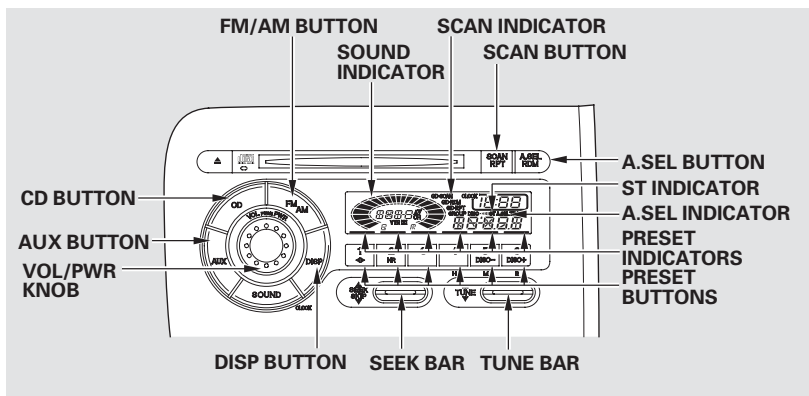


## Audio System (A Type)

Your audio system provides clear reception on each band while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favourite stations.

### Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the VOL/PWR knob, the FM/AM button, the CD button or the AUX button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.



The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the FM/AM button. On the UKW (FM) band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. ST will flash if you are driving in an area where the radio signal is weak. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the preset buttons.

CONTINUED







## Audio System (A Type)

---

**TUNE** – Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Push the TUNE bar ▲ to tune to a higher frequency, or ▼ to tune to a lower frequency. Push the bar ▲ or ▼ until the display reaches the desired frequency.

**SEEK** – The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, push the SEEK bar ▲ or ▼, then release it. Depending on which part of the SEEK bar you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** – You can store the frequencies of your favourite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band.
2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve on FM.

Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the audio fuse is removed.

### 170 Comfort and Convenience Features



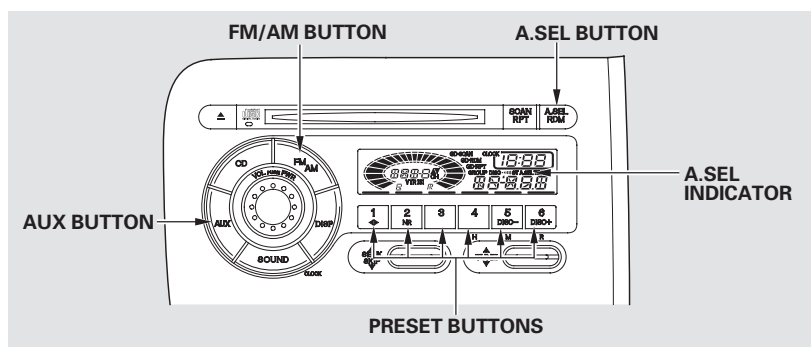


## Audio System (A Type)

**AUTO SELECT** – If you are travelling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate AUTO SELECT, press the A. SEL button. “A. SEL” will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong AM stations or twelve strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a “0” displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



With Auto Select on, you can manually store any frequencies in the preset buttons.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.





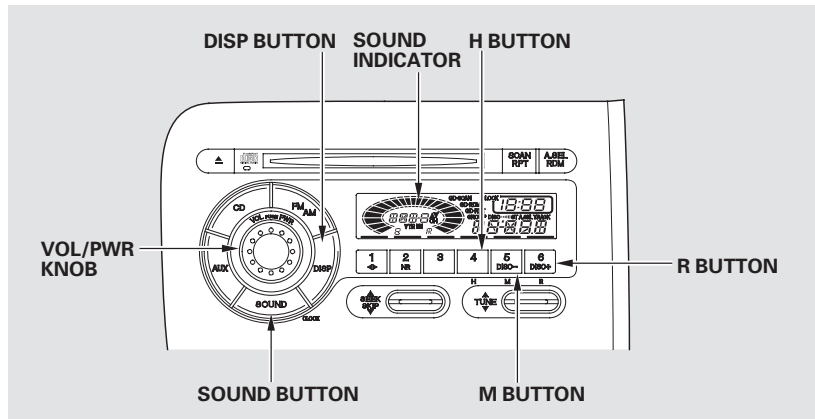
## Audio System (A Type)

### Adjusting the Sound

Bass, Treble, Fader, and Balance are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the SOUND button. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to the selected audio mode, each time you press the SOUND button. Each mode is shown in the display as it changes.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Select BAL or FAD by pressing the SOUND button. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the VOL/PWR knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the SOUND button. Adjust the desired mode by turning the VOL/PWR knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.

As you adjust a mode, you will hear a beep whenever the adjustment level reaches the centre, maximum, or minimum of its range. The system will automatically return the display to normal mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the VOL/PWR knob.

### 172 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (A Type)

### Digital Clock

The display of your audio system usually shows the time when the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

To set the time, press the SOUND button for more than 2 seconds. You will hear a beep, and the time display will begin blinking.

To set the hours, press and hold the H (Preset 4) button until the hour advances to the desired time.

To set the minutes, press and hold the M (Preset 5) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

You can use the R (Preset 6) button to quickly set the time to the nearest hour. Press the R (Preset 6) button. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example:

- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the time setting will be lost. To set the time again, follow the setting procedure.

**DISPLAY** — When operating the audio system, you can choose to display the sound indicator or the volume indicator by pressing the DISP button.

With a disc playing, you can choose to display the track number or the play time by pressing the DISP button for more than 2 seconds.





## Audio System (A Type)

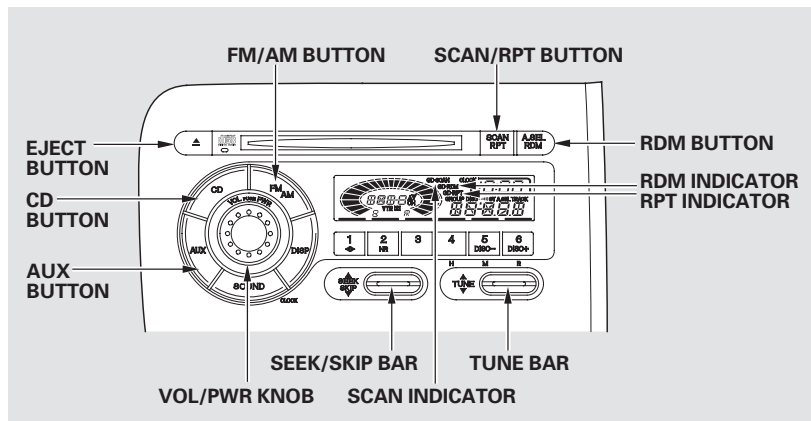
### Operating the CD Player

You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.

You can also play 8-cm (3-in) discs without using an adapter ring. You should not try to use an adapter ring. This may cause the audio system to damage or malfunction.

For best results when using CD-R/CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use. When recording a CD-R/CD-RW, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players.



In all cases, play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

#### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play the disc again.

### 174 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (A Type)

You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the FM/AM button. Press the CD button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.

If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the VOL/PWR knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the EJECT button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD button.

You can use the TUNE bar or the SEEK/SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages or to change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, push and hold the TUNE bar or the SEEK/SKIP bar. Push and hold ▲ to move forward. Press and hold ▼ to move backward. Release the bar when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you push and release the SEEK/SKIP bar ▲, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Push and release ▼ to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Push it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

With a disc playing, you can use the REPEAT, RANDOM and SCAN functions.

*CONTINUED*





## Audio System (A Type)

---

**REPEAT** – To activate the Repeat feature, press the SCAN/RPT button for more than 2 seconds. You will see RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the SCAN/RPT button for more than 2 seconds again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** – This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press and release the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing RDM again.

**SCAN** – This feature, when activated, samples all the tracks on the CD in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate the Scan feature, select the Scan mode by pressing the SCAN/RPT button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first track approximately 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following tracks for 10 seconds each. When it plays a track that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN/RPT button again. After all tracks on that disc are sampled, the SCAN mode is cancelled. Pressing the SCAN/RPT button again will also deactivate this feature.

**Protecting Compact Discs**  
For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.

### 176 Comfort and Convenience Features








## Audio System (A Type)

### CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
 DISC	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
 ERR	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player. Consult your dealer.
 Hot	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.







## Audio System (A Type)

---

### Operating the CD Changer (Optional)

A Compact Disc changer is available for your vehicle. It holds up to 6 discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the in-dash CD player.

Load the desired CDs in the magazine and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

Press the AUX button. You will see "CD" in the display. The system will start to play the first track of the first disc. When that disc ends, the next disc in the magazine is loaded and played. After the last disc finishes, the system returns to disc 1.

To select a different disc, press the DISC + (Preset 6) or DISC - (Preset 5) button. The next disc in the changer is loaded and played when you press the DISC + button. DISC - loads and plays the previous disc. If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

If you load a CD in the in-dash player while the changer is playing a CD, the system will stop the changer and begin playing the in-dash CD. To select the changer again, press the AUX button. Play will begin where it left off. Use the AUX button to switch between the player and the changer.

If you eject the in-dash CD while it is playing, the system will automatically switch to the CD changer and begin play where it left off. If there are no CDs in the changer, the display will flash. You will have to select another mode (AM or FM) with the FM/AM button.

When you switch back to CD mode, the system selects the same unit (in-dash or changer) that was playing when you switched out of CD mode.

To use the SKIP, REPEAT, and RANDOM functions, refer to the in-dash player operating instructions.

### Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.



## 178 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (A Type)

### CD Changer Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CD DISC	FOCUS Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
CD ERR	Mechanical Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
CD NO	No CD in the CD magazine	Insert CD.
CD Hot	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
CD EJECT	No CD magazine in the CD changer	Insert CD magazine.




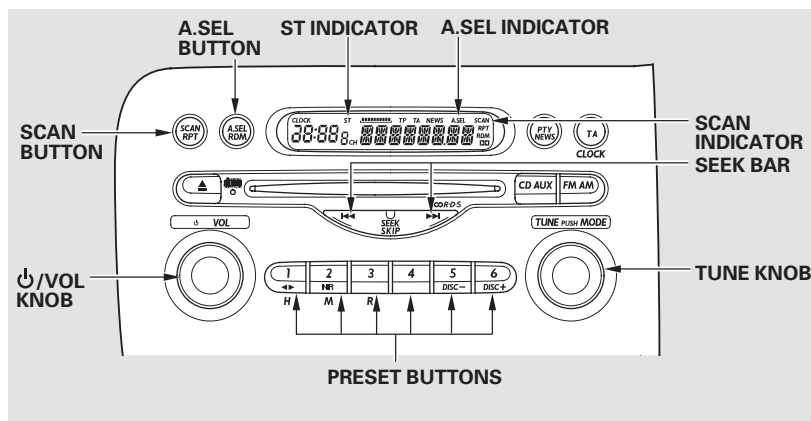


## Audio System (B Type)

Your audio system provides clear reception on each band while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favourite stations.

### Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the  /VOL knob, the FM/AM button or CD/AUX button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.



The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the FM/AM button. On the UKW (FM) band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. ST will flash if you are driving in an area where the radio signal is weak. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the preset buttons.

### 180 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (B Type)

**TUNE** – Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the TUNE knob to the right to tune to a higher frequency, or to the left to tune to a lower frequency. Turn the knob right or left until the display reaches the desired frequency.

**SEEK** – The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the SEEK bar **▶▶** or **◀◀**, then release it. Depending on which part of the SEEK bar you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately 5 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for 5 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** – You can store the frequencies of your favourite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band.

2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the audio fuse is removed.

*CONTINUED*



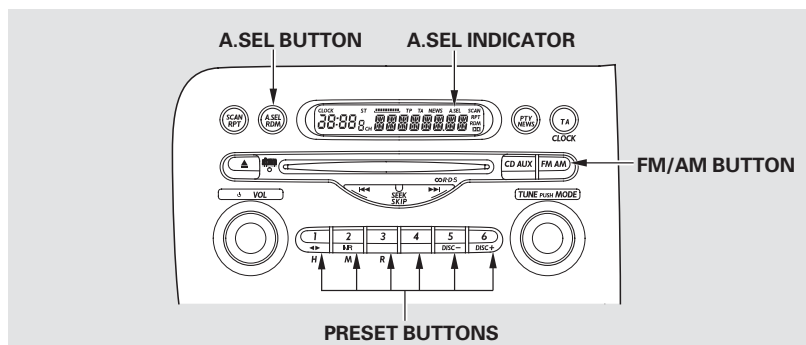


## Audio System (B Type)

**AUTO SELECT** – If you are travelling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate Auto Select, press the A. SEL button. A. SEL will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans FM band, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a "0" displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



With Auto Select on, you can manually store any frequencies in the preset buttons.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.

### 182 Comfort and Convenience Features





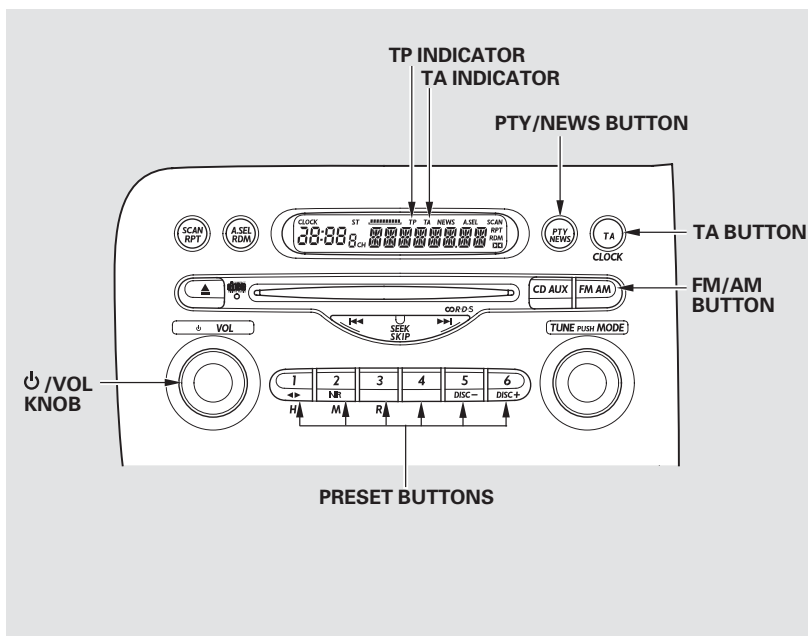
## Audio System (B Type)

### Radio Data System (RDS)

With your audio system, you can utilize many convenient features provided by the Radio Data System (RDS).

With the FM band selected, you can keep listening to the same station even if its frequency changes as you enter different regions while you are travelling.

The RDS function turns on automatically when you turn the system on. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name will be displayed. Then, the system will automatically keep selecting the frequency with the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the same programs. This can save you the trouble of re-tuning to obtain the same station as long as you are in the same RDS network area.





CONTINUED





## Audio System (B Type)

You can turn the RDS function on or off. To switch the function on or off, press the  /VOL knob for more than 2 seconds with the audio system on, then press the Preset 2 repeatedly. To set the RDS on or off, press the  /VOL knob again.

When the signals of the RDS station become so weak that the system can no longer follow the station, the system will hold the last tuned frequency and the display will change from the station name to the frequency.

In some countries, you cannot utilize features provided by RDS as the RDS function is not provided in all stations.

### **Program Service Name Display**

If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name or PTY information will be displayed. Press and release the PTY/NEWS button to switch the display information between the name of network/station and the PTY information (see page 186 for the PTY display information).

### **TA (Traffic Announcement Standby) Function**

When the TA button is pressed and released, "TA" will light on the display and the system will stand by for traffic announcements.

When a traffic information (TP) station is selected, "TP" will light on the display indicating that traffic reports can be received from this station. When the EON (Enhanced Other Network) TP station is selected, "TP" will also light on the display.

EON information cross-references other program services that broadcast traffic information, and when EON information is received, traffic reports can be received through another program service.

## 184 Comfort and Convenience Features



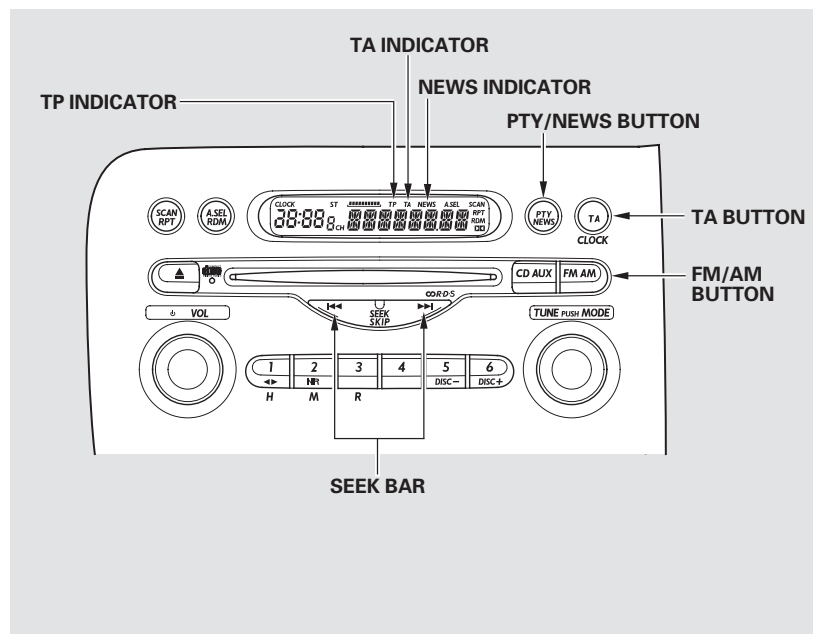


## Audio System (B Type)

You can receive traffic information while you are listening to a CD. If the system is tuned to a TP or EON TP station before playing a CD, the system will stand by for traffic announcements by pressing the TA button ("TA" indicator ON) and the system will switch from CD to the traffic announcement when it begins. The system will return to the CD mode when the traffic information is finished.

To turn off the TA function, press the TA button again. "TA" will go out from the display.

If you use SEEK or Auto Select with the TA function ON, the system searches only TP or EON TP stations.



CONTINUED







## Audio System (B Type)

---

### ***PTY Display Function***

When the PTY/NEWS button is pressed for more than 2 seconds, the PTY display function comes on. This function lets you know the type of programs the selected RDS station is broadcasting. For example, if the station is broadcasting dramas, "DRAMA" is shown in the display. If it is a station of scientific programs, "SCIENCE" will be shown. The principal PTYs are shown in the following.

AFFAIRS : Topical programs expanding upon the news.  
CLASSICS : Serious classics; performances of major orchestral works.  
CULTURE : Programs concerned with any aspect of national or regional culture.  
DRAMA : All radio plays and serials.  
EASY MUS : M.O.R MUSIC.  
EDUCATE : Educational programs.  
INFO : General information and advice.  
L.CLASS : Light classics; classical music for non-specialist appreciation.  
NEWS : Short accounts of facts, events, publicly expressed views, reportage, etc.  
OTH MUS : Other types of music, such as Jazz, R & B, Folk, Country, Reggae.  
POP MUS : Commercial music of popular appeal.  
ROCK MUS : Contemporary modern music.

SCIENCE : Programs about nature, science, and technology.  
SPORT : Programs concerned with any aspect of sports.  
VARIED : Light entertainment programs.

### **186 Comfort and Convenience Features**





## Audio System (B Type)

After you select the desired program type, the system will search for a station with the same PTY code as the selected program type. When you use this function for the first time, "NEWS" will appear as it was preset at the factory.

If the selected RDS station does not transmit PTY data, "NO PTY" is displayed. When the selected station is not an RDS station, "NO RDS" is displayed for about 5 seconds. The PTY display function turns off and the display returns to normal if no further steps are taken.

While a PTY is displayed, you can use the SEEK bar to find a station of the desired PTY. When you press either side of the SEEK bar, the display will show different PTYs (see the PTYs list on the previous page).

The PTY setting mode is cancelled if no further steps are taken within 5 seconds after selecting the desired PTY by operating the SEEK bar.

After your desired PTY is displayed, press either side of the SEEK bar again within 5 seconds. The system will go into the PTY search mode and it will search for a station of the selected PTY. If there is no station available in the selected PTY, "NO PTY" is displayed for about 5 seconds and the PTY search mode is cancelled.

Some stations may broadcast the programs with contents different from their PTY code.

In the PTY search mode, the tuning step is set to 50 kHz while searching the FM band. This step changes to 100 kHz when the AF or TA function is activated.

*CONTINUED*





## Audio System (B Type)

---

### ***PTY/News Interrupt Function***

To activate this function, press the PTY/NEWS button for more than 2 seconds and select "NEWS." The system will hold the last tuned FM station/network PTY while you are listening to the CD. With this function on, playing the CD is interrupted and the system switches from CD mode to the FM newscast when the newscast is broadcasting from the FM station.

When the program is changed to another program or the frequency cannot be received for 10 seconds due to weak signal, the system will return to the CD mode automatically.

Your audio system has other interrupt functions (including TA function). The interrupt function first activated has priority over the others and the indication of the other interrupt function goes out. To activate the other interrupt function, turn off the currently activated interrupt function.

### ***PTY Alarm***

PTY code "ALARM" is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, "ALARM" comes on the display and the volume is changed. When the alarm is cancelled, the system will return to the normal operation mode.

## 188 Comfort and Convenience Features





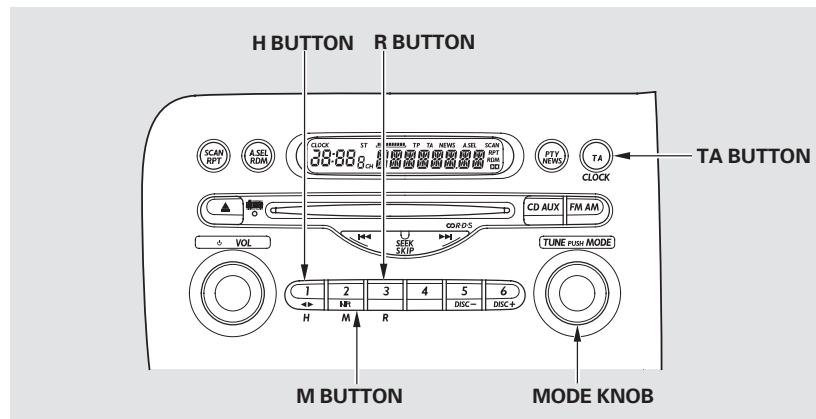
## Audio System (B Type)

### Adjusting the Sound

Bass, Treble, Balance, and Fader are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the MODE knob. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to BAS each time you press the button. Each mode is shown in the display as it changes.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Select BAL or FAD by pressing the MODE knob. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the MODE knob. Adjust the desired mode by turning the knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.

As you adjust a mode, you will hear a beep whenever the adjustment level reaches the centre, maximum, or minimum of its range. The system will automatically return the display to normal mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the MODE knob.





## Audio System (B Type)

---

### Digital Clock

The display of your audio system usually shows the time when the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

To set the time, press the TA button for more than 2 seconds until you hear a beep. The time display will begin blinking.

To set the hours, press the H (Preset 1) button. Press and hold the H button until the hour advances to the desired time.

To set the minutes, press the M (Preset 2) button. Press and hold the M button until the minutes numbers advance to the desired time.

You can use the R (Preset 3) button to quickly set the time to the nearest hour. Press the R (Preset 3) button. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing R (Preset 3) sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, pressing R (Preset 3) sets the clock forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example:

- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the time setting will be lost. To set the time again, follow the setting procedure.





## Audio System (B Type)

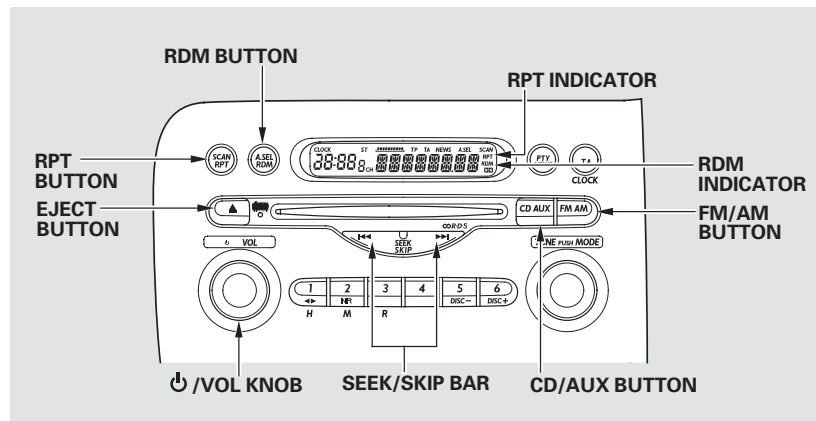
### Operating the CD Player

You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.

You can also play 8-cm (3-in) discs without using an adapter ring. You should not try to use an adapter ring. This may cause the audio system to damage or malfunction.

For best results when using CD-R/CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use. When recording a CD-R/CD-RW, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players.



In all cases, play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

#### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play the disc again.

CONTINUED






## Audio System (B Type)

---



You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the FM/AM button. Press the CD/AUX button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.



If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the  /VOL knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the EJECT button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD/AUX button.

You can use the SEEK/SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the SEEK/SKIP bar. Press and hold the  side to move forward. You will see CUE in the display. Press and hold the  side to move backward. You will see REW displayed. Release the bar when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press and release the  side of the SEEK/SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the  side to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

With a disc playing, you can use the REPEAT and RANDOM functions.

### 192 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (B Type)

**REPEAT** — To activate the Repeat feature, press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display as a reminder. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the RPT button again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** — This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press and release the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing RDM again.

**Protecting Compact Discs**  
For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.







## Audio System (B Type)

### CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
<i>CD DISC</i>	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
<i>CD ERROR</i>	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player. Consult your dealer.
<i>CD HEAT</i>	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.





## Audio System (B Type)

### Operating the CD Changer (Optional)

A Compact Disc changer is available for your vehicle. It holds up to 6 discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the in-dash CD player.

Load the desired CDs in the magazine and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

Press the CD/AUX button. You will see "CD" in the display. The system will start to play the first track of the first disc. When that disc ends, the next disc in the magazine is loaded and played. After the last disc finishes, the system returns to disc 1.

To select a different disc, press the DISC + (Preset 6) or DISC - (Preset 5) button. The next disc in the changer is loaded and played when you press the DISC + button. DISC - loads and plays the previous disc. If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

If you load a CD in the in-dash player while the changer is playing a CD, the system will stop the changer and begin playing the in-dash CD. To select the changer again, press the CD/AUX button. Play will begin where it left off. Use the CD/AUX button to switch between the player and the changer.

If you eject the in-dash CD while it is playing, the system will automatically switch to the CD changer and begin play where it left off. If there are no CDs in the changer, the display will flash. You will have to select another mode (AM or FM) with the FM/AM button.

When you switch back to CD mode, the system selects the same unit (in-dash or changer) that was playing when you switched out of CD mode.

To use the SKIP, REPEAT, and RANDOM functions, refer to the in-dash player operating instructions.

### Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.





## Audio System (B Type)

### CD Changer Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CD DISC	FOCUS Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
CD ERROR	Mechanical Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
CD HEAT	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
CD EJECT	No CD magazine in the CD changer	Insert CD magazine.




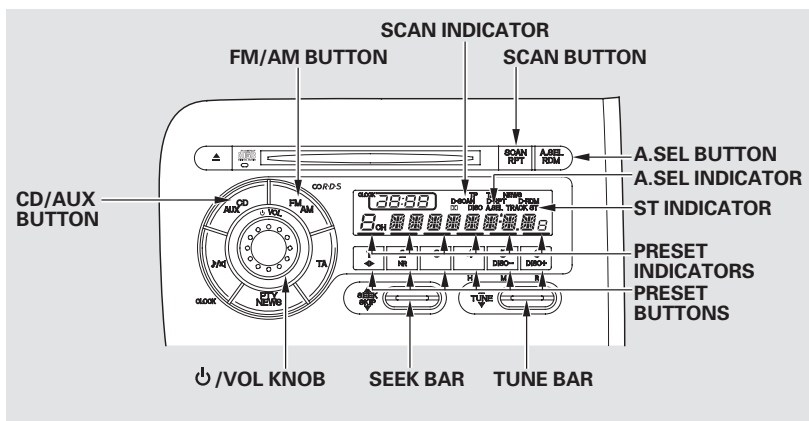


## Audio System (C Type)

Your vehicle's audio system provides clear reception on each band while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favourite stations.

### Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the  /VOL knob, the FM/AM button or CD/AUX button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.



The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the FM/AM button. On the UKW (FM) band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. ST will flash if you are driving in an area where the radio signal is weak. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the preset buttons.

*CONTINUED*





## Audio System (C Type)

---

**TUNE** – Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Push the TUNE bar ▲ to tune to a higher frequency, or ▼ to tune to a lower frequency. Push the bar ▲ or ▼ until the display reaches the desired frequency.

**SEEK** – The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, push the SEEK bar ▲ or ▼, then release it. Depending on which part of the SEEK bar you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** – You can store the frequencies of your favourite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band.
2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store the desired station in all six preset buttons.

Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the audio fuse is removed.



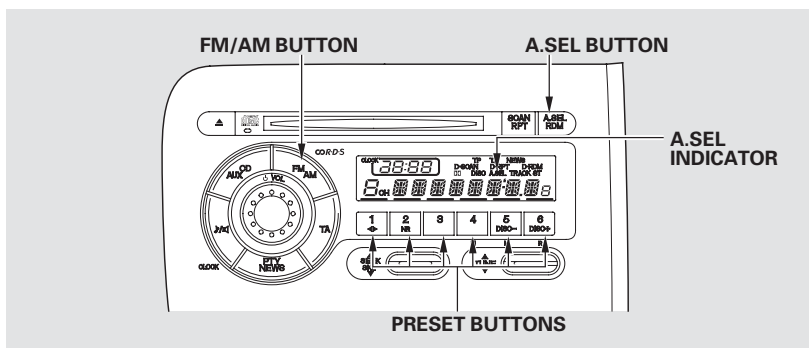


## Audio System (C Type)

**AUTO SELECT** – If you are travelling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate AUTO SELECT, press the A. SEL button. "A. SEL" will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a "0" displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



With Auto Select on, you can manually store any frequencies in the preset buttons.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.





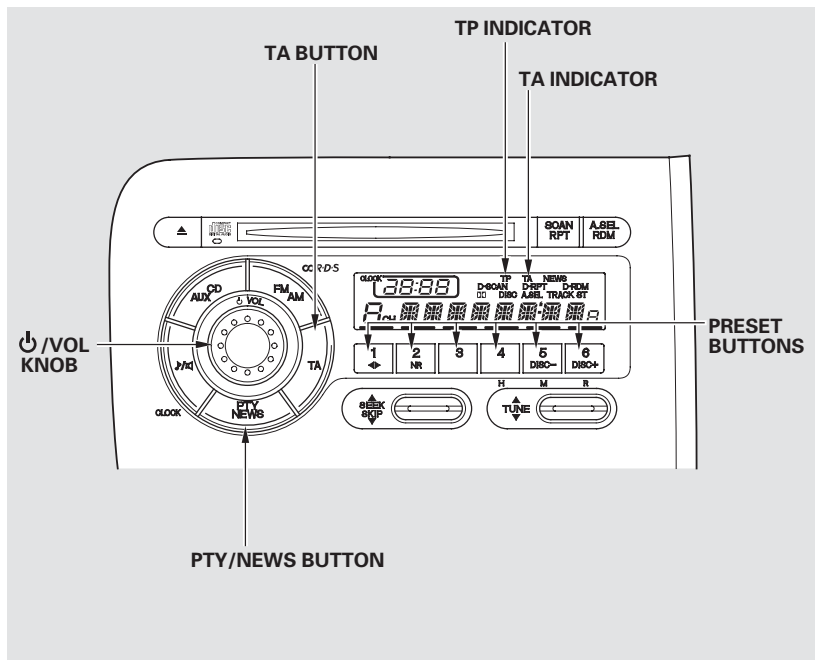
## Audio System (C Type)

### Radio Data System (RDS)

With your audio system, you can utilize many convenient features provided by the Radio Data System (RDS).

With the FM band selected, you can keep listening to the same station even if its frequency changes as you enter different regions while you are travelling.

The RDS function turns on automatically when you turn the system on. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name will be displayed. Then, the system will automatically keep selecting the frequency with the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the same programs. This can save you the trouble of re-tuning to obtain the same station as long as you are in the same RDS network area.





### 200 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (C Type)

You can turn the RDS functions on or off. To switch the function on or off, press the  /VOL knob for more than 2 seconds with the audio system on, then press the Preset 1 (AF), or the Preset 2 (REG), or the Preset 3 (PS). To set the RDS functions on or off, press the  /VOL knob again.

When the signals of the RDS station become so weak that the system can no longer follow the station, the system will hold the last tuned frequency and the display will change from the station name to the frequency.

In some countries, you cannot utilize features provided by RDS as the RDS function is not provided in all stations.

### **AF (Alternative Frequency)**

It automatically selects a similar program as the one in play from another station in the adjacent area.

### **REG (Regional Program)**

With this function selected, the radio “knows” that certain broadcasters do not air the same programs at the same time. In REG mode, the radio remains turned into the regional program and will not change to another frequency to compensate for weak reception.

### **PS (Program Service)**

If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the frequency display will disappear and the station name or PTY information will be displayed. Press and release the PTY/NEWS button to switch the display information between the name of network/station and the PTY information (see page 203 for the PTY display information).

### **TA (Traffic Announcement Standby) Function**

When the TA button is pressed and released, “TA” will light on the display and the system will stand by for traffic announcements.

When a traffic information (TP) station is selected, “TP” will light on the display indicating that traffic reports can be received from this station. When the EON (Enhanced Other Network) TP station is selected, “TP” will also light on the display.

EON information cross-references other program services that broadcast traffic information, and when EON information is received, traffic reports can be received through another program service.

CONTINUED





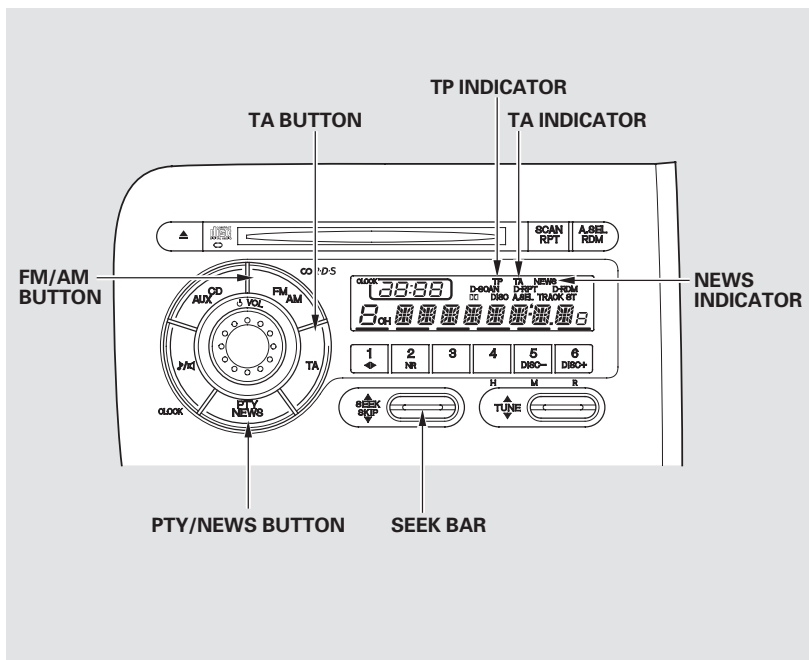


## Audio System (C Type)

You can receive traffic information while you are listening to a CD. If the system is tuned to a TP or EON TP station before playing a CD, the system will stand by for traffic announcements by pressing the TA button ("TA" indicator ON) and the system will switch from CD to the traffic announcement when it begins. The system will return to the CD mode when the traffic information is finished.

To turn off the TA function, press the TA button again. "TA" will go out from the display.

If you use SEEK or Auto Select with the TA function ON, the system searches only TP or EON TP stations.



### 202 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (C Type)

### ***PTY Display Function***

When the PTY/NEWS button is pressed for more than 2 seconds, the PTY display function comes on. This function lets you know the type of programs the selected RDS station is broadcasting. For example, if the station is broadcasting dramas, "DRAMA" is shown in the display. If it is a station of scientific programs, "SCIENCE" will be shown. The principal PTYs are shown in the following.

AFFAIRS : Topical programs expanding upon the news.  
CLASSICS : Serious classics; performances of major orchestral works.  
CULTURE : Programs concerned with any aspect of national or regional culture.  
DRAMA : All radio plays and serials.  
EASY MUS : M.O.R MUSIC.  
EDUCATE : Educational programs.  
INFO : General information and advice.  
L.CLASS : Light classics; classical music for non-specialist appreciation.  
NEWS : Short accounts of facts, events, publicly expressed views, reportage, etc.  
OTH MUS : Other types of music, such as Jazz, R & B, Folk, Country, Reggae.  
POP MUS : Commercial music of popular appeal.  
ROCK MUS : Contemporary modern music.

SCIENCE : Programs about nature, science, and technology.  
SPORT : Programs concerned with any aspect of sports.  
VARIED : Light entertainment programs.

CONTINUED

Comfort and Convenience Features **203**





## Audio System (C Type)

---

After you select the desired program type, the system will search for a station with the same PTY code as the selected program type. When you use this function for the first time, "NEWS" will appear as it was preset at the factory.

If the selected RDS station does not transmit PTY data, "NO PTY" is displayed. When the selected station is not an RDS station, "NO RDS" is displayed for about 5 seconds. The PTY display function turns off and the display returns to normal if no further steps are taken.

While a PTY is displayed, you can use the SEEK bar to find a station of the desired PTY. When you press either side of the SEEK bar, the display will show different PTYs (see the PTYs list on the previous page).

The PTY setting mode is cancelled if no further steps are taken within 5 seconds after selecting the desired PTY by operating the SEEK bar.

After your desired PTY is displayed, press either side of the SEEK bar again within 5 seconds. The system will go into the PTY search mode and it will search for a station of the selected PTY. If there is no station available in the selected PTY, "NO PTY" is displayed for about 5 seconds and the PTY search mode is cancelled.

Some stations may broadcast the programs with contents different from their PTY code.

In the PTY search mode, the tuning step is set to 50 kHz while searching the FM band. This step changes to 100 kHz when the AF or TA function is activated.

### 204 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (C Type)

### ***PTY/News Interrupt Function***

To activate this function, press the PTY/NEWS button for more than 2 seconds and select "NEWS." The system will hold the last tuned FM station/network PTY while you are listening to the CD. With this function on, playing the CD is interrupted and the system switches from CD mode to the FM newscast when the newscast is broadcasting from the FM station.

When the program is changed to another program or the frequency cannot be received for 10 seconds due to weak signal, the system will return to the CD mode automatically.

Your audio system has other interrupt functions (including TA function). The interrupt function first activated has priority over the others and the indication of the other interrupt function goes out. To activate the other interrupt function, turn off the currently activated interrupt function.

### ***PTY Alarm***

PTY code "ALARM" is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, "ALARM" comes on the display and the volume is changed. When the alarm is cancelled, the system will return to the normal operation mode.





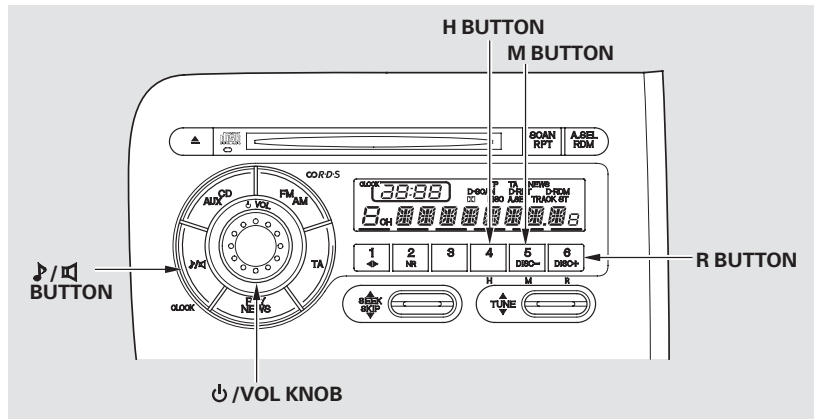
## Audio System (C Type)

### Adjusting the Sound

Bass, Treble, Fader, and Balance are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the / button. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to BAS each time you press the button. Each mode is shown in the display as it changes.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Select BAL or FAD by pressing the / button. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the /VOL knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the / button. Adjust the desired mode by turning the /VOL knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.

As you adjust a mode, you will hear a beep whenever the adjustment level reaches the centre, maximum, or minimum of its range. The system will automatically return the display to normal mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the /VOL knob.

### 206 Comfort and Convenience Features







## Audio System (C Type)

### Digital Clock

The display of your audio system usually shows the time when the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

To set the time, press the  /  button for more than 2 seconds until you hear a beep. The time display will begin blinking.

To set the hours, press and hold the H (Preset 4) button until the hour advances to the desired time.

To set the minutes, press and hold the M (Preset 5) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

You can use the R (Preset 6) button to quickly set the time to the nearest hour. Press the R (Preset 6) button. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example:

- 1:06 would RESET to 1:00
- 1:52 would RESET to 2:00

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the time setting will be lost. To set the time again, follow the setting procedure.





## Audio System (C Type)

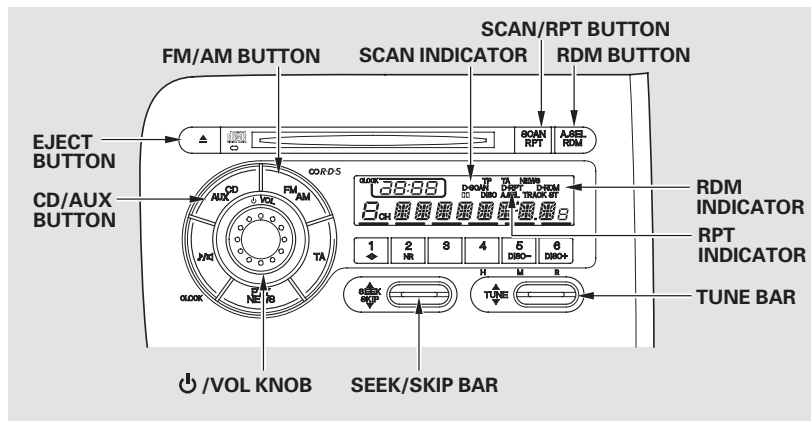
### Operating the CD Player

You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.

You can also play 8-cm (3-in) discs without using an adapter ring. You should not try to use an adapter ring. This may cause the audio system to damage or malfunction.

For best results when using CD-R/CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use. When recording a CD-R/CD-RW, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players.



In all cases, play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

#### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play the disc again.

### 208 Comfort and Convenience Features






07/09/12 09:37:51 32SAA650\_212



## Audio System (C Type)



You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the FM/AM button. Press the CD/AUX button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.



If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the  /VOL knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the EJECT button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD/AUX button.

You can use the TUNE bar or the SEEK/SKIP bar while a disc is playing to select passages or to change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, push and hold the TUNE bar or the SEEK/SKIP bar. Push and hold  to move forward. Press and hold  to move backward. Release the bar when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you push and release the SEEK/SKIP bar , the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Push and release  to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Push it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

With a disc playing, you can use the REPEAT, RANDOM and SCAN functions.

*CONTINUED*

Comfort and Convenience Features **209**







## Audio System (C Type)

---

**REPEAT** – To activate the Repeat feature, press the SCAN/RPT button for more than 2 seconds. You will see RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the SCAN/RPT button for more than 2 seconds again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** – This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press and release the RDM button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing RDM again.

**SCAN** – This feature, when activated, samples all the tracks on the CD in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate the Scan feature, select the Scan mode by pressing the SCAN/RPT button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first track approximately 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following tracks for 10 seconds each. When it plays a track that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN/RPT button again. After all tracks on that disc are sampled, the SCAN mode is cancelled. Pressing the SCAN/RPT button again will also deactivate this feature.

**Protecting Compact Discs**  
For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.

### 210 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (C Type)

### CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
<i>CD DISC</i>	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
<i>CD ERR</i>	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player. Consult your dealer.
<i>CD HOT</i>	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.





## Audio System (C Type)

---

### Operating the CD Changer (Optional)

A Compact Disc changer is available for your vehicle. It holds up to 6 discs, providing several hours of continuous entertainment. You operate this CD changer with the same controls used for the in-dash CD player.

Load the desired CDs in the magazine and load the magazine in the changer according to the instructions that came with the unit. Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

Press the CD/AUX button. You will see "CD" in the display. The system will start to play the first track of the first disc. When that disc ends, the next disc in the magazine is loaded and played. After the last disc finishes, the system returns to disc 1.

To select a different disc, press the DISC + (Preset 6) or DISC - (Preset 5) button. The next disc in the changer is loaded and played when you press the DISC + button. DISC - loads and plays the previous disc. If you select an empty slot in the magazine, the changer will, after finding that slot empty, try to load the CD in the next slot. This continues until it finds a CD to load and play.

If you load a CD in the in-dash player while the changer is playing a CD, the system will stop the changer and begin playing the in-dash CD. To select the changer again, press the CD/AUX button. Play will begin where it left off. Use the CD/AUX button to switch between the player and the changer.

If you eject the in-dash CD while it is playing, the system will automatically switch to the CD changer and begin play where it left off. If there are no CDs in the changer, the display will flash. You will have to select another mode (AM or FM) with the FM/AM button.

When you switch back to CD mode, the system selects the same unit (in-dash or changer) that was playing when you switched out of CD mode.

To use the SKIP, REPEAT, and RANDOM functions, refer to the in-dash player operating instructions.

### Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.

## 212 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (C Type)

### CD Changer Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD changer, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
<i>CDC DISC</i>	FOCUS Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
<i>CDC ERR</i>	Mechanical Error	Press the magazine eject button and pull out the magazine, check for error indication. Insert the magazine again. If the code does not disappear or the magazine cannot be pulled out, consult your dealer.
<i>CDC HOT</i>	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
<i>CDC EJEC</i>	No CD magazine in the CD changer	Insert CD magazine.



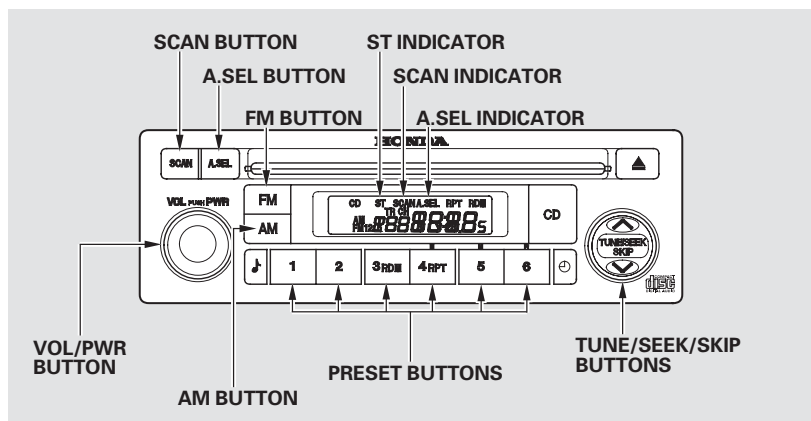


## Audio System (D Type)

Your audio system provides clear reception on each band while the preset buttons allow you to easily select your favourite stations.

### Operating the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the audio system. Turn the system on by pushing the VOL/PWR knob, the AM or FM button or CD button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob.



The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to is displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.



You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: TUNE, SEEK, SCAN, AUTO SELECT, and the preset buttons.



## 214 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (D Type)

**TUNE** – Use the TUNE/SEEK/SKIP buttons to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the  button to tune to a higher frequency, or the  button to tune to a lower frequency.

**SEEK** – The SEEK function searches the band for a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the TUNE/SEEK/SKIP buttons on either the  or  side until you hear a beep, then release it. Depending on which side you press, the system scans upward or downward from the current frequency. It stops when it finds a station with a strong signal.

**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all the stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan up the band for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for approximately 5 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play that for 5 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

**Preset** – You can store the frequencies of your favourite radio stations in the six preset buttons. Each button will store one frequency on the AM band, and two frequencies on the FM band.

To store a frequency:

1. Select the desired band.
2. Use the TUNE, SEEK, or SCAN function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick the preset button you want for that station. Press the button and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to store the desired station in all six preset buttons.

Once a station's frequency is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The preset frequencies will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the audio fuse is removed.

*CONTINUED*

Comfort and Convenience Features **215**



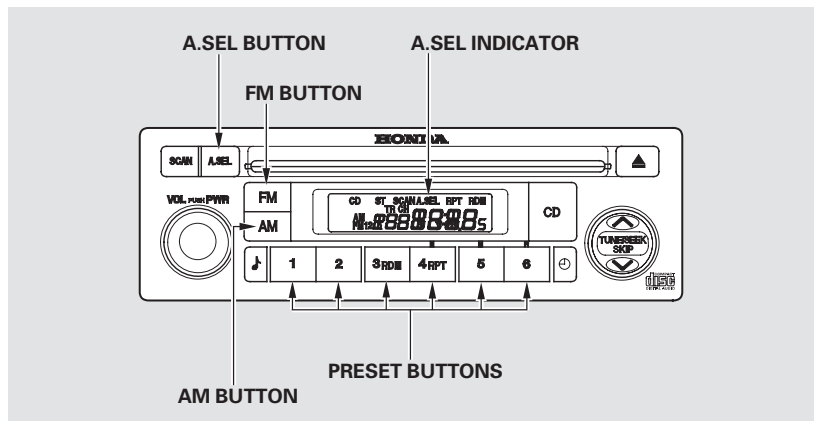


## Audio System (D Type)

**AUTO SELECT** – If you are travelling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the Auto Select feature to find stations in the local area.

To activate AUTO SELECT, press the A. SEL button. “A. SEL” will flash in the display, and the system will go into scan mode for several seconds. It automatically scans both bands, looking for stations with strong signals. It stores the frequencies of six AM stations and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons. You can then use the preset buttons to select those stations.

If you are in a remote area, Auto Select may not find six strong AM stations or twelve strong FM stations. If this happens, you will see a “0” displayed when you press any preset button that does not have a station stored.



With Auto Select on, you can manually store any frequencies in the preset buttons.

Auto Select does not erase the frequencies that you preset previously. When you return home, turn off Auto Select by pressing the A. SEL button. The preset buttons will then select the frequencies you originally set.

### 216 Comfort and Convenience Features





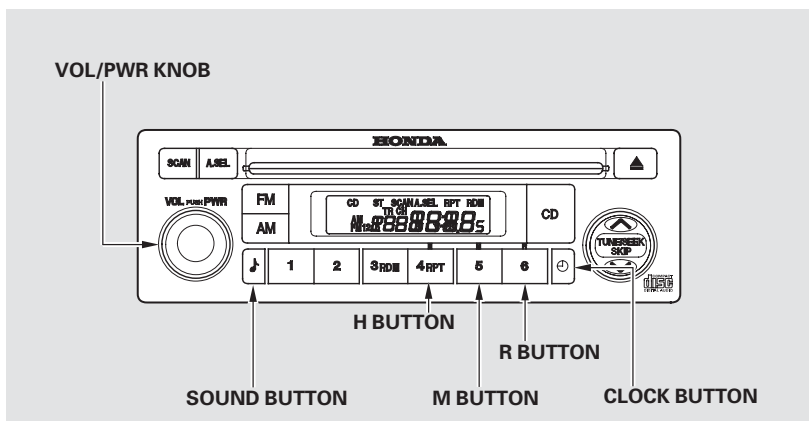
## Audio System (D Type)

### Adjusting the Sound

Bass, Treble, Fader, and Balance are each adjustable. You select which of these you want to adjust by pressing the SOUND button. The mode changes from BAS to TRE to FAD to BAL, and then back to BAS each time you press the button. Each mode is shown in the display as it changes.

**Balance/Fader** — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjusts the side-to-side strength, while FAD adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Select BAL or FAD by pressing the SOUND button. Adjust the Balance or Fader to your liking by turning the VOL/PWR knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.



**Treble/Bass** — Use these modes to adjust the tone to your liking. Select TRE or BAS by pressing the SOUND button. Adjust the desired mode by turning the VOL/PWR knob. The adjustment level is shown on the display.

The system will automatically return the display to the selected audio mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode with the VOL/PWR knob.







## Audio System (D Type)

---

### Digital Clock

The display of your audio system usually shows the time when the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

To set the time, press the CLOCK button for more than 2 seconds until you hear a beep. The time display will begin blinking.

To set the hours, press and hold the H (Preset 4) button until the hour advances to the desired time.

To set the minutes, press and hold the M (Preset 5) button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

You can use the R (Preset 6) button to quickly set the time to the nearest hour. Press the R (Preset 6) button. If the displayed time is before the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, pressing R (Preset 6) sets the clock forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example:

- 1:06 will reset to 1:00
- 1:52 will reset to 2:00

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the time setting will be lost. To set the time again, follow the setting procedure.





## Audio System (D Type)

### Operating the CD Player

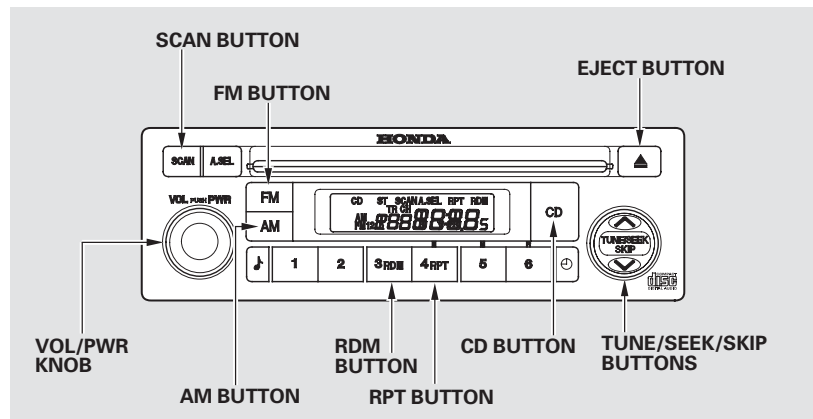
You operate the CD player with the same controls used for the radio.

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, insert the disc into the CD slot. Push the disc in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way and begin to play. The number of the track that is playing is shown in the display.

For best results when using CD-R/CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labelled for audio use. When recording a CD-R/CD-RW, the recording must be closed in order for the disc to be used by CD players.

#### NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.



In all cases, play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped CDs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.

You cannot load and play 8-cm (3-in) discs in this system.

When the system reaches the end of the disc, it will return to the beginning and play the disc again.

CONTINUED

Comfort and Convenience Features 219





## Audio System (D Type)

---



You can switch to the radio while a CD is playing by pressing the AM or FM button. Press the CD button to return to playing the CD. The CD will begin playing where it left off.



If you turn the system off while a CD is playing, either with the VOL/PWR knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the CD will begin playing where it left off.

Press the EJECT button to remove the disc from the drive.

If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the CD player in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the CD button.

You can use the TUNE/SEEK/SKIP buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the TUNE/SEEK/SKIP buttons. Press the  side to move forward. Press the  side to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press and release the  side of the TUNE/SEEK/SKIP buttons, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the  side to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

With a disc playing, you can use the REPEAT, RANDOM and SCAN functions.



### 220 Comfort and Convenience Features





## Audio System (D Type)

**REPEAT** – To activate the Repeat feature, press the RPT (preset 4) button. You will see RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current track. Press the RPT button again to turn it off.

**RANDOM PLAY** – This feature, when activated, plays the tracks on the CD in random order, rather than in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate Random Play, press the RDM (preset 3) button. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play tracks randomly. This continues until you deactivate Random Play by pressing RDM again.

**SCAN** – This feature, when activated, samples all the tracks on the CD in the order they are recorded on the CD. To activate the Scan feature, select the Scan mode by pressing the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first track approximately 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following tracks for 10 seconds each. When it plays a track that you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again. After all tracks on that disc are sampled, the SCAN mode is cancelled. Pressing the SCAN button again will also deactivate this feature.

### Protecting Compact Discs

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page 225.








## Audio System (D Type)

### CD Player Error Indications

If you see an error indication in the display while operating the CD player, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to your dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
 <b>DISC</b>	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check if the disc is inserted correctly in the CD player. Make sure the disc is not scratched or damaged.
 <b>ERR</b>	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation. If the CD cannot be pulled out or the error indication does not disappear after the disc is ejected, see your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player. Consult your dealer.
 <b>HOT</b>	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.





## Audio System

### Radio Frequencies (Mexico model)

Your vehicle's radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands. Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band:  
530 to 1,710 kilohertz

FM band:  
87.7 to 107.9 megahertz

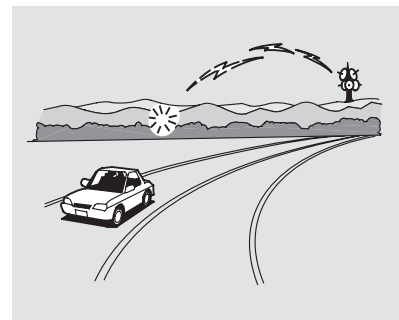
Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least ten kilohertz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 megahertz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as "FM101."

### Radio Reception (Mexico model)

How well your vehicle's radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station's transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

A radio station's signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station's signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio's reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

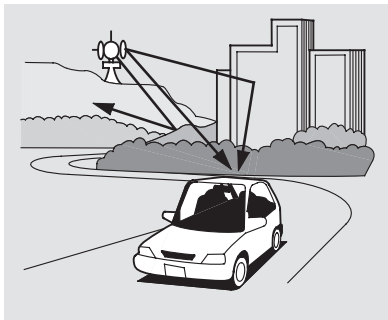
*CONTINUED*

Comfort and Convenience Features **223**





## Audio System



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.



Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

*As required by the FCC:  
Changes or modifications not expressly  
approved by the party responsible for  
compliance could void the user's  
authority to operate the equipment.*

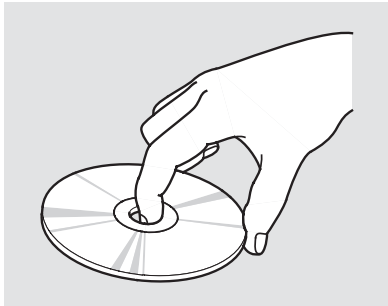
### 224 Comfort and Convenience Features



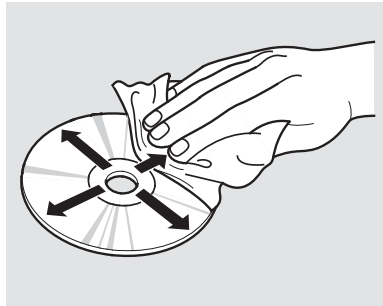


## Audio System

### Protecting Compact Discs

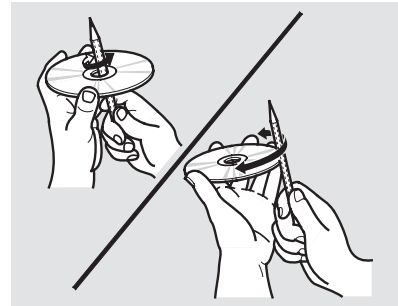


Handle a CD by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD. These, along with contamination from fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the CD to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.



When a CD is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the centre to the outside edge.



A new CD may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the CD player or the magazine.

Comfort and Convenience Features **225**

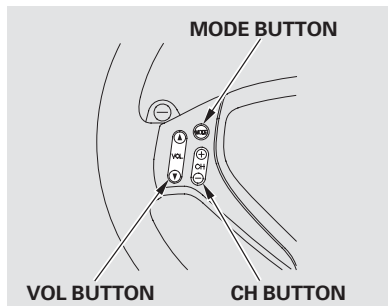






## Audio System

### Remote Audio Controls (For some types)



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button and hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM or CD (if a CD is loaded).

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (–) to go back to the previous preset station.

If you are playing a CD, the system skips to the beginning of the next track each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (–) to return to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to return to the previous track. You will see the disc and track number in the display.

### 226 Comfort and Convenience Features



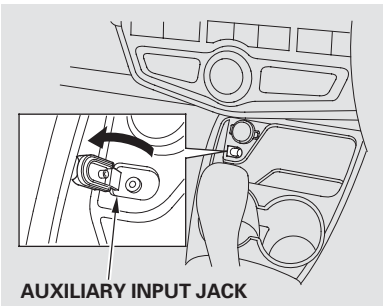


07/09/12 09:40:07 32SAA650\_230



## Audio System

### Auxiliary Input Jack (For some types)



Auxiliary Input Jack is on the centre console panel. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories.

When the appropriate audio unit is connected with the auxiliary input jack, press the AUX button to select the unit.





07/09/12 09:40:10 32SAA650\_231





## Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what petrol to use, and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period .....	230
Petrol .....	230
Service Station Procedures .....	231
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	231
Opening the Bonnet .....	233
Oil Check .....	234
Engine Coolant Check .....	236
Fuel Cutoff System.....	237
Fuel Economy .....	238
Vehicle Condition .....	238
Driving Habits.....	238
Accessories and Modifications ....	239
Accessories.....	239
Modifications .....	240
Additional Safety Precautions..	240
Carrying Luggage.....	241
Load Limit .....	242
Carrying Items in the	
Passenger Compartment .....	242
Carrying Luggage in the	
Luggage Area or on a	
Roof Rack .....	243





## Break-in Period, Petrol

---

### Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 1,000 km (625 miles). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking. New brakes need to be broken-in by moderate use for the first 300 km (187.5 miles).
- Do not change the oil until the recommended time or distance interval shown in the maintenance schedule.
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should follow these same recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are relined.

### 230 Before Driving

#### *For some types*

We also recommend that you should not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 miles).

#### **Petrol**

Using petrol containing lead will damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. This contributes to air pollution.

#### ***EU models:***

##### ***Turkey models:***

##### ***Israel models:***

Your vehicle is designed to operate most effectively on Premium unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher.

Petrol of the recommended Research Octane Number (RON) may not be available in some areas. In this case, petrol of a lower octane may be used if it does not cause engine "knocking."

##### ***Except EU models:***

Your vehicle is designed to operate on Regular unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher.

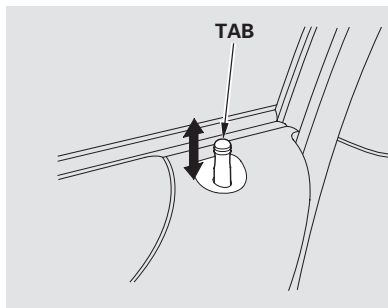
Petrol of the recommended Research Octane Number (RON) may not be available in some areas. In this case, petrol of a lower octane may be used if it does not cause engine "knocking."





## Service Station Procedures

### Filling the Fuel Tank

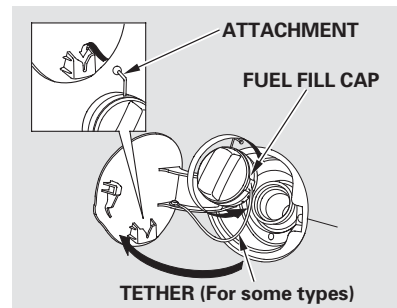


1. Because the fuel fill cap is on the left side of the vehicle, park with that side closest to the service station pumps.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pulling on the tab of the driver's door.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank escapes.

#### *For some types*

The fuel fill cap is attached to the fuel filler with a tether to avoid losing the cap. Put the attachment on the fuel fill cap into the slit on the fuel fill door.

*CONTINUED*

Before Driving **231**





## Service Station Procedures

---

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to “top off” the tank, leave some room for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on, tighten it until it clicks at least once.

6. Push the fuel fill door closed.

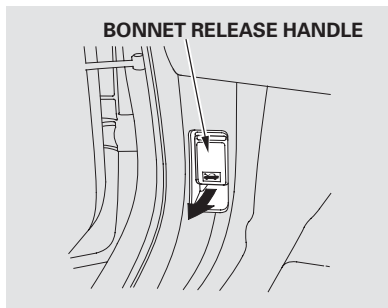
Refer to page 346 for high pressure washing of the vehicle.





## Service Station Procedures

### Opening the Bonnet



1. Shift to Park or neutral and set the parking brake. Pull the bonnet release handle located under the lower corner of the dashboard. The bonnet will pop up slightly.



2. Standing in front of the vehicle, put your fingers between the front edge of the bonnet and the front grille. The bonnet latch handle is above the "H" logo. Push this handle up until it releases the bonnet. Lift the bonnet.

If you can open the bonnet without lifting the bonnet latch handle, or the bonnet latch handle moves stiffly or does not spring back as before, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated (see page 302).

*CONTINUED*

**Before Driving 233**

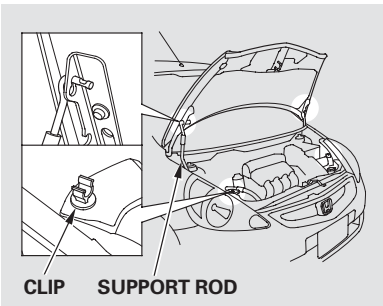






## Service Station Procedures

---



3. Pull the support rod out of its clip by holding the grip and insert the end into the hole on the centre left or right side of the bonnet.

To close the bonnet, lift it up slightly to remove the support rod from the hole. Put the support rod back into its holding clip. Lower the bonnet to about 30 cm (a foot) above the fender, then let it drop.

After closing the bonnet, make sure it is securely latched.

### **Oil Check**

All engines consume oil as part of their normal operation, therefore, the engine oil level must be checked regularly, for example when refuelling. Always check the oil before a long journey.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

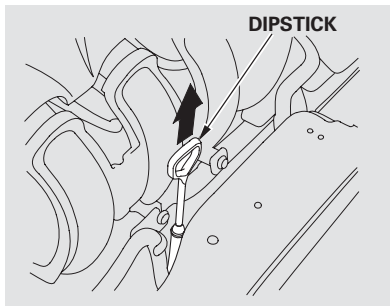
Make sure the engine is warmed up and parked on level ground. Turn off the engine and wait approximately 3 minutes before checking the oil level.

### **234** Before Driving

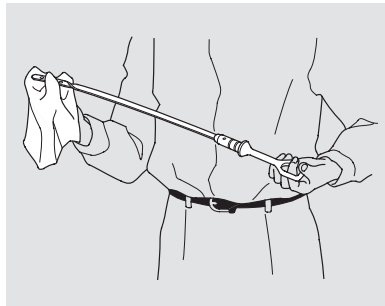




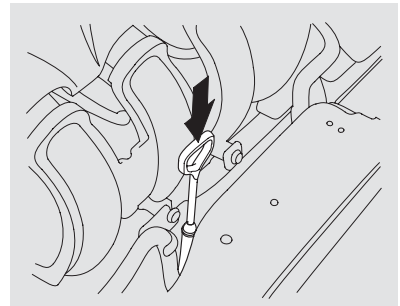
## Service Station Procedures



1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).



2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.



3. Insert it all the way back in its tube.

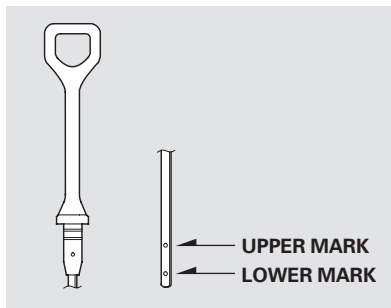
*CONTINUED*

**Before Driving 235**





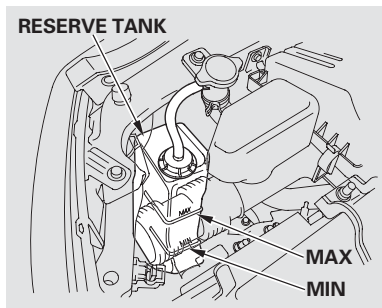
## Service Station Procedures



4. Remove the dipstick again and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Oil** on page 286 .

### Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 290 for information on adding the proper coolant.

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 283 for information on checking other items in your vehicle.

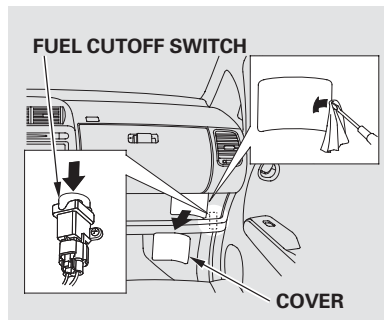




## Fuel Cutoff System (For some types)

There is a fuel cutoff switch behind the dashboard on the passenger's door side.

To locate the switch, remove the dashboard cover first, then take off the side kick panel. Extend your arm through the removed side kick panel.



In a collision or sudden impact, this switch automatically cuts off the fuel supply to the engine.

After the switch has activated, it must be reset by pressing the button before the engine can be restarted.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Leaking petrol can ignite or explode, causing you to be seriously or fatally injured.**

**Always check for fuel leaks before resetting the switch.**





## Fuel Economy

---

The condition of your vehicle and your driving habits are the two most important things that affect the fuel consumption.

### Vehicle Condition

Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance schedule. This will keep it in top operating condition.

An important part of that maintenance is the **Owner's Maintenance Checks** (see page 283). For example, an underinflated tyre causes more "rolling resistance," which uses fuel. It also wears out faster, so check the tyre pressure at least monthly.

In winter, the build-up of snow on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel consumption and reduces the chance of corrosion.

### Driving Habits

You can improve fuel economy by driving moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.

Always drive in the highest gear that allows the engine to run and accelerate smoothly.

Depending on traffic conditions, try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel.

A cold engine uses more fuel than a warm engine. It is not necessary to "warm-up" a cold engine by letting it idle for a long time. You can drive away in about a minute, no matter how cold it is outside. The engine will warm up faster, and you get better fuel economy. To cut down on the number of "cold starts," try to combine several short trips into one.

The air conditioning (on some types) puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Turn off the A/C to cut down on air conditioning use. Use the flow-through ventilation when the outside air temperature is moderate.

### 238 Before Driving





## Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Honda accessories, can make your vehicle unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

### Accessories

Your dealer has genuine Honda accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle.

Non-Honda accessories are usually designed for universal applications. Although aftermarket accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability (see "Modifications" on page 240 for additional information).

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer-controlled systems, such as the SRS and anti-lock brake system.

However, if electronic accessories are improperly installed, or exceed your vehicle's electrical system

capacity, they can interfere with the operation of your vehicle, or even cause the airbags to deploy.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see pages 377 and 379).
- Have the installer contact your dealer for assistance before installing any electronic accessory.

If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.





## Accessories and Modifications

---

### Modifications

Do not remove any original equipment or modify your vehicle in any way that would alter its design or operation. This could make your vehicle unsafe and illegal to drive.

For example, do not make any modifications that would change the ride height of your vehicle, or install wheels and tyres with a different overall diameter.

Such modifications can adversely affect handling, and interfere with the operation of the vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.

In addition, any modifications that decrease ground clearance increase the chance of undercarriage parts striking a curb, speed bump, or other raised object, which could cause your airbags to deploy.

Do not modify your steering wheel or any other part of your Supplemental Restraint System. Modifications could make the system ineffective.

### Additional Safety Precautions

**Do not attach or place objects on the airbag covers.** Any object attached to or placed on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG," in the centre of the steering wheel and on top of the dashboard, could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags. Or, if the airbags inflate, the objects could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.

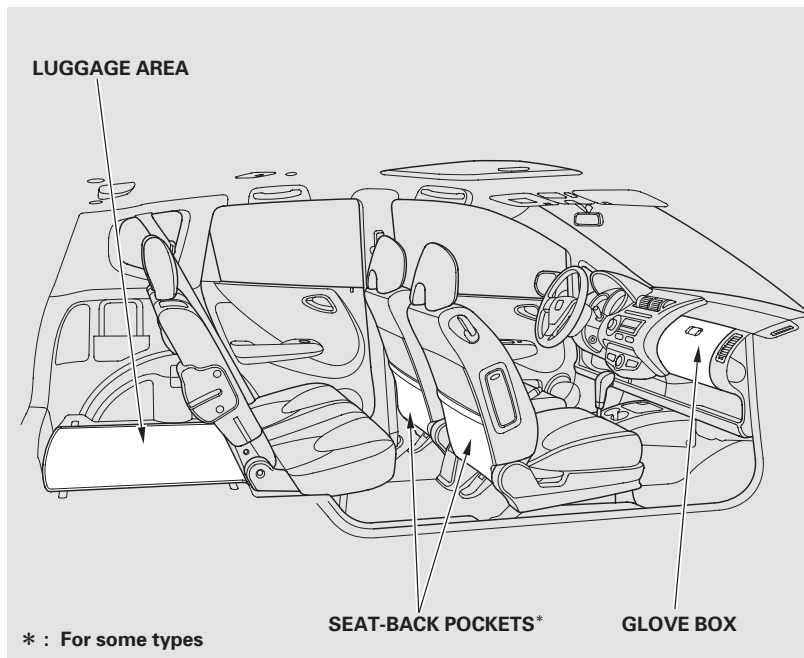
### On vehicles with side airbags

- **Do not attach hard objects on or near a front door.** If a side airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- **Do not place any objects over the outside edge of a front seat-back.** Covering the outside edge of a front seat-back, with a non-Honda seat cover for example, could prevent the airbag from inflating properly.





## Carrying Luggage



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas so you can stow luggage safely.

The glove box, and the pockets (on some types) in the seat-backs, are designed for small, lightweight items. The luggage area is intended for larger, heavier items. In addition, the back seat can be folded down to allow you to carry more luggage or longer items.

However, carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and operation, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of luggage, be sure to read the following pages.

Before Driving **241**







## Carrying Luggage

### Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, luggage and hitch must not exceed the maximum permissible weight. The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight. Refer to page 389 for the maximum permissible weight and maximum permissible axle weight.

*(For some countries)*

When you load luggage, the combined weight of the vehicle, all passengers and their luggage, and trailer nose load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Mass. The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the Gross Axle Mass. The specifications are shown on the engine number plate attached to the radiator support bulkhead (see page 386).

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.**

**Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.**

### Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the tonneau cover (for some types). They can block your rear view, and could be thrown about the interior in a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or with the proper operation of the seats. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

## 242 Before Driving





## Carrying Luggage

### Carrying Luggage in the Luggage Area or on a Roof Rack

- Distribute luggage evenly on the floor of the luggage area, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible. Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving.
- If you fold down the back seat, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop. Try to secure the items with rope or cord so they will not shift while you are driving. Do not stack items higher than the back of the front seats.

Refer to page 127 for folding the rear seats.

- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the tailgate, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 79 .
- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed the maximum allowable weight. Please contact your dealer for further information.

Concerning lashing means and retaining devices offered on the accessory market, please contact your dealer.

### NOTICE

A normal bike rack must not be fitted to the tailgate.





07/09/12 09:42:10 32SAA650\_247





## Driving

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the manual and automatic transmissions (CVT). It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Preparing to Drive .....	246	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	
Starting the Engine.....	247	System.....	264
Starting in Cold Weather		Driving in Bad Weather.....	267
at High Altitude .....	248	Towing a Trailer .....	269
Manual Transmission.....	248		
Recommended Shift Points.....	249		
Maximum Allowable Speeds....	250		
Automatic Transmission (CVT) ..	251		
Continuously Variable			
Transmission (CVT) .....	251		
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..	251		
Shift Lever Positions .....	252		
Honda CVT + 7 Speed Mode..	255		
7-Speed Auto Shift Mode.....	255		
7-Speed Manual Shift			
Mode .....	256		
Shift Lock Release.....	258		
Parking.....	259		
Parking Tips.....	259		
The Braking System.....	260		
Brake Wear Indicators.....	260		
Brake System Design.....	261		
Anti-lock Brakes .....	261		
Important Safety			
Reminders .....	262		
ABS Indicator .....	262		





## Preparing to Drive

---

You should do the following checks and adjustments every day before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the bonnet and tailgate are fully closed.
3. Visually check the tyres. If a tyre looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
4. Check that any items you may be carrying with you inside are stored properly or fastened down securely.
5. Check the adjustment of the seat (see page 124 ).
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see pages 137 and 138 ).
7. Check the adjustment of the steering wheel (see page 109 ).
8. Make sure the doors are securely closed.
9. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 18 ).
10. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Check the indicators in the instrument panel.
11. Start the engine (see page 247 ).
12. Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel (see page 86 ).



### 246 Driving





## Starting the Engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. *Manual transmission:*  
Push the clutch pedal down all the way and shift the transmission to neutral.

*Automatic transmission (CVT):*  
Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.

4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. If the engine does not start right away, do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. Pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

### NOTICE

The Immobilizer System (on some types) protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. See **Immobilizer System** on page 112 .

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed half-way down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine still does not start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down and hold it there while starting in order to clear flooding. As before, keep the ignition key in the START (III) position for no more than 15 seconds. Return to step 5 if the engine does not start. If it starts, lift your foot off the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.





## Starting the Engine, Manual Transmission

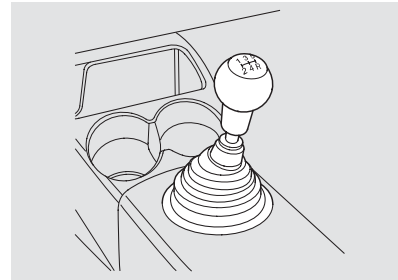
### Starting in Cold Weather at High Altitude (Above 2,400 metres/8,000 feet)

An engine is harder to start in cold weather. The thinner air found at high altitude above 2,400 meters (8,000 feet) adds to the problem. Use the following procedure:

1. Turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
2. Push the accelerator pedal halfway to the floor and hold it there while starting the engine. Do not hold the ignition key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds. When the engine starts, release the accelerator pedal gradually as the engine speeds up and smooths out.
3. If the engine fails to start in step 2, push the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it there while you try to start the engine for no more than 15 seconds. If the engine does not start, return to step 2.

If the outside temperature is below freezing, or if your vehicle has not been driven for several days, warm up the engine for a few minutes before driving (prohibited in Germany! § 30 StVO).

### Manual Transmission



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot shift directly from fifth to reverse. When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause excessive clutch wear.





## Manual Transmission

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear. Refer to the Maximum Allowable Speeds Chart.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Rapid slowing or speeding-up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.**

**Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.**

**Recommended Shift Points**  
Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you the best fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	24 km/h (15 mph)
2nd to 3rd	40 km/h (25 mph)
3rd to 4th	64 km/h (40 mph)
4th to 5th	75 km/h (47 mph)







## Manual Transmission

### Maximum Allowable Speeds

The speeds in this table are the maximum allowable speeds in each gear. If you exceed these speeds, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the RPM below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the vehicle will not exceed the maximum allowable speed in the chart in the lower gear to avoid engine damage.

Gear	Maximum allowable speeds
1st	47 km/h (29 mph) <sup>*1</sup> 49 km/h (31 mph) <sup>*2</sup> 51 km/h (32 mph) <sup>*3</sup>
2nd	46 km/h (29 mph) <sup>*4, *5</sup> 85 km/h (53 mph) <sup>*1</sup> 88 km/h (55 mph) <sup>*2</sup> 93 km/h (58 mph) <sup>*3</sup>
3rd	82 km/h (51 mph) <sup>*4, *5</sup> 127 km/h (79 mph) <sup>*1</sup> 125 km/h (77 mph) <sup>*2</sup> 131 km/h (82 mph) <sup>*3</sup>
4th	124 km/h (77 mph) <sup>*4, *5</sup> 173 km/h (107 mph) <sup>*1</sup> 160 km/h (99 mph) <sup>*2</sup> 168 km/h (105 mph) <sup>*3</sup> 158 km/h (99 mph) <sup>*4, *5</sup>

\* 1 : 1.2 l SOHC model (Except KY models)

\* 2 : 1.3 l/1.4 l SOHC model  
(Except KY, KZ, KN, KM, KX and KP models)

\* 3 : 1.5 l SOHC VTEC model

\* 4 : 1.2 l SOHC model (KY model)

\* 5 : 1.3 l/1.4 l SOHC model (KY, KZ, KN, KM, KX and KP models)

KY model : Bahrain, Egypt, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, U.A.E

KZ model : Brunei, Singapore

KN model : South Africa

KM model : Brazil

KX model : Mexico

KP model : Argentina, Chile



## 250 Driving



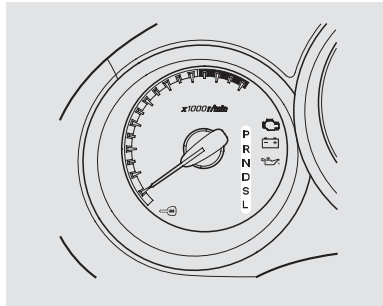


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

### Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) (For some types)

Honda's Continuously Variable Transmission's unique design provides a smooth, constant flow of power. It is electronically controlled for more precise operation and better fuel economy.

### Shift Lever Position Indicator



This indicator on the instrument panel shows which position the shift lever is in.

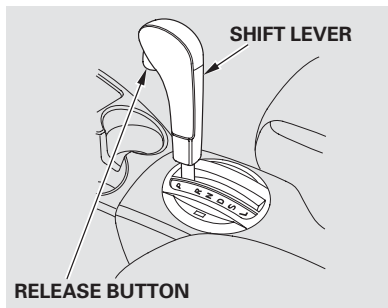
The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

### Shift Lever Positions



The shift lever has six positions. It must be in Park or neutral to start the engine. When you are stopped in D, S, L, N or R, press firmly on the brake pedal and keep your foot off the accelerator pedal. When you start along a slope to go uphill, be sure to apply the parking brake in addition to using the foot brake because creeping may be less effective.

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal and press the release button.
R to P N to R S to L	Press the release button.
L to S S to D D to N D to S N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.

You cannot shift out of Park with the brake pedal depressed when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position.

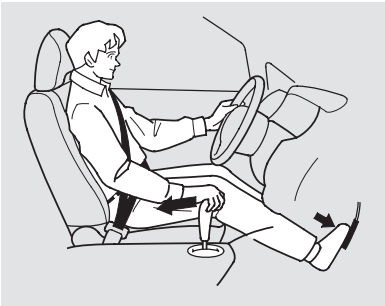
**Park (P)** – This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal, have your foot off the accelerator pedal, and press the release button on the front of the shift lever.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see Shift Lock Release on page 258.





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)



You must also press the release button to shift into Park. To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

**Reverse (R)** — To shift from reverse to Park, see the explanation under Park. To shift to reverse from neutral, come to a complete stop first. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

**Neutral (N)** — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Always shift to Park position if you need to leave the vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another position.

**Drive (D)** — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically adjusts to keep the engine at the best speed for driving conditions. To help the engine warm up faster, the transmission will select ratios that allow the engine to run at higher speeds when it is cold.

*CONTINUED*

**Driving 253**





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

---

**Sport (S)** – Selecting Sport shifts the transmission into a lower range of ratios for better acceleration and increased engine braking. Use Sport when you are going down a steep hill.

**Low (L)** – To shift to Low, press the release button on the front of the shift lever. Use Low to get more power when climbing, and for maximum engine braking when going down steep hills.

For faster acceleration when in D or S, the transmission will automatically “kick down” to a lower range of ratios by pushing the accelerator pedal to the floor.



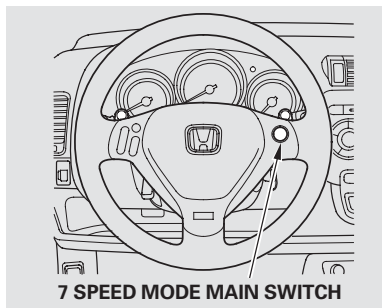


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

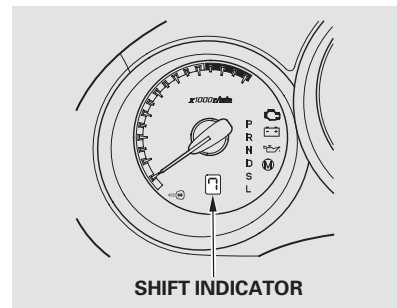
### Honda CVT + 7 Speed Mode (For some types)

This CVT is provided with a seven-stage speed mode in the “D” and “S” position. The 7 Speed Mode has two options; the 7-speed auto shift mode and 7-speed manual shift mode. By using the 7 Speed Mode Main Switch, the transmission can be shifted up and down automatically through seven-stages. In the auto shift mode, the steering shift switch is ready to be activated. When this switch is activated, the auto shift mode will be cancelled and 7-speed manual shift mode comes into operation. In this mode, the driver can shift up and down manually in seven-stage speed with the use of steering shift switches; much like a manual transmission.

### 7-Speed Auto Shift Mode



As you press the 7 Speed Mode Main Switch, you activate the 7-speed auto shift mode. Shifting of seven-stage speed will take place depending on the throttle opening and the vehicle speed. The current stage is shown in the shift indicator located in the instrument panel.



Under certain conditions, the auto shift mode may shift to the over-drive in the “D” position. At this time, the shift indicator displays “7”.

CONTINUED

Driving 255



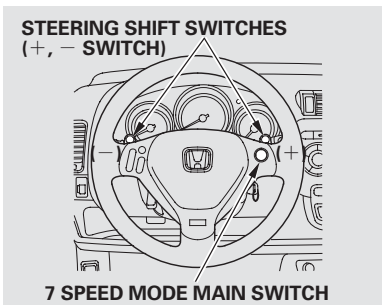


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

To release the 7-speed auto shift mode and return to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT), either press the 7 Speed Mode Main Switch or move the shift lever to another position. When moving the shift lever, be careful not to operate incorrectly (see page 252).

When the engine is stopped in the 7-speed auto shift mode, restarting returns the system to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT).

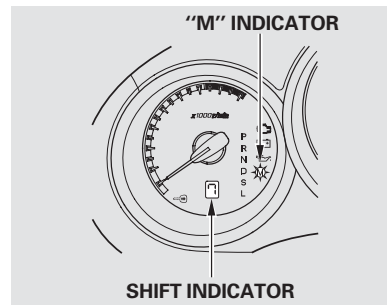
### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode



The following are the procedures to change to the 7-speed manual shift mode.

1. Move the shift lever to the “D” or “S” position.

Select the shift position that matches the way of driving (see pages 253 and 254).



2. Press the 7 Speed Mode Main Switch.  
The currently-selected speed will be shown in the shift indicator of the instrument panel.
3. Press the steering shift switch (+ or - switch).  
The “M” indicator in the instrument panel will come on and the selected speed will be shown on the shift indicator.





## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

Execute this operation after confirming that the “M” indicator is illuminated.

The 7-speed manual shift mode allows shifting of the 1st to 7th position.

To shift, press the steering shift switch (+ or – switch).

To shift up, press the + switch.

To shift down, press the – switch.

No more than two speeds can be changed at a time.

Under certain conditions, the manual shift mode may shift to the overdrive in the “D” position. At this time, the shift indicator displays “7”.

If you keep depressing the accelerator pedal without pressing the shift switch, the speed will be automatically shifted up just before the tachometer’s red zone.

If you stop without pressing the shift switch, the speed will be automatically shifted down to the 2nd speed. If you want to start from the 1st speed, press the – switch.

To release the 7-speed manual shift mode and return to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT), either press the 7 Speed Mode Main Switch or move the shift lever to another position. When moving the shift lever, be careful not to operate incorrectly (see page 252).

When the engine is stopped in the 7-speed manual shift mode, restarting returns the system to the ordinary automatic transmission (CVT).

The 7-speed manual shift mode will not function under the following conditions.

- When shifting up with the vehicle stopped, you cannot go any further than the 3rd speed.
- When shifting down during running, no shift-down will take place when the shifting down causes over-revving of the engine.
- No shift-up will take place when less than the set-up engine revolutions.
- No shifting will take place when pressing + and – switches simultaneously.
- No shifting will take place when pressing one of the two shift switches with another shift switch being pressed.





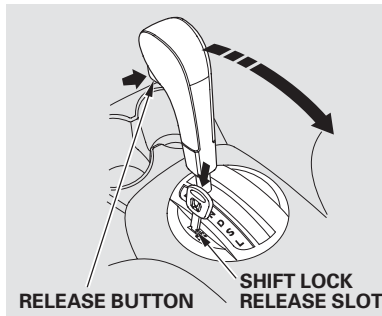


## Automatic Transmission (CVT)

### Shift Lock Release

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Turn off the engine and set the parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.



3. Insert the key in the Shift Lock Release slot next to the shift lever.
4. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

5. Remove the key from the Shift Lock Release slot. Depress the brake pedal and restart the engine.

If you need to use the Shift Lock Release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.





## Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. The indicator on the instrument panel shows that the parking brake is not fully released; it does not indicate that the parking brake is firmly set. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission (CVT), set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission — making it easier to move the shift lever out of Park when you want to drive away.

If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in first gear.

If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.

Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

### ***Parking Tips***

- Make sure the sunroof (on some types) and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the luggage area, or take them with you.
- Lock the doors and tailgate with the key or the remote transmitter (on some types).
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The three way catalytic converter gets very hot, and could cause these materials to catch on fire.





## The Braking System

---

Your vehicle is equipped with front disc brakes. The brakes on the rear wheels may be disc or drum, depending on the model. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The ABS (on some types) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Put your foot on the brake pedal only when you intend to brake. Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, causing them to build up heat. Heat build-up can reduce how well your brakes work. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by downshifting to a lower gear and taking your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Check your brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Since a longer distance is needed to stop with wet brakes, be extra cautious and alert in your driving.

### **Brake Wear Indicators**

The front disc brakes on all models have audible brake wear indicators. On some types, they are also on the rear brakes.

When the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive metallic “screeching” sound when you apply the brakes. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will begin screeching all the time.

Your brakes may sometimes squeal or squeak when you apply them lightly. Do not confuse this with the brake wear indicators. They make a very audible “screeching.”

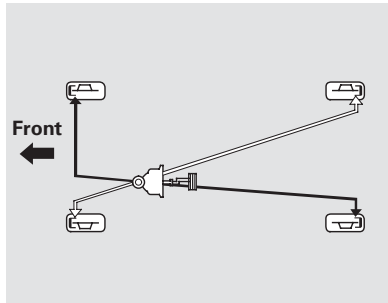




## The Braking System

### Brake System Design

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.



### Anti-lock Brakes (For some types)

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) helps to prevent the wheels from locking up and skidding during hard braking, allowing you to retain steering control.

When the front tyres skid, you lose steering control; the vehicle continues straight ahead even though you turn the steering wheel. The ABS helps to prevent lock-up and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly; much faster than a person can do it.

The ABS also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

**You should never pump the brake pedal;** this defeats the purpose of the ABS. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal as you steer away from the hazard. This is sometimes referred to as *"stomp and steer."*

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal; it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes.

Activation varies with the amount of traction your tyres have. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before you activate the ABS. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

CONTINUED

Driving 261





## The Braking System

### *Important Safety Reminders*

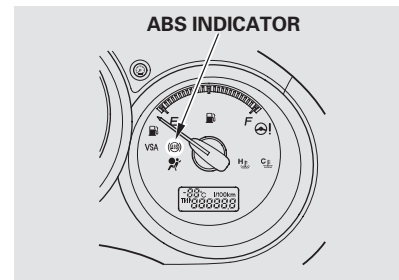
**ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle;** it only helps with steering control during braking. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other vehicles.

**ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly,** such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe, prudent speed for the road and weather conditions.

**ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability.** Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

**A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop** on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock. Slow down and allow a greater distance between vehicles under those conditions.

### *ABS Indicator*



The ABS is self-checking. If anything goes wrong, the ABS indicator on the instrument panel comes on (see page 93). This means the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system without anti-lock, providing normal stopping ability. You should have the dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible if this indicator stays on after you start the engine, or comes on while driving.





## The Braking System

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the front-to-rear braking distribution system may also shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 371 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

*For some types*

The VSA indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.





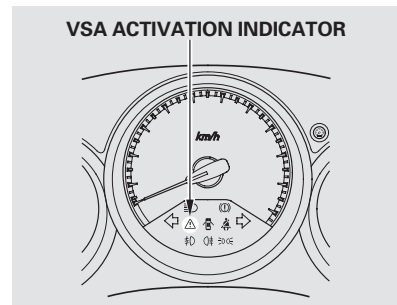
## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System (For some types)

The Vehicle Stability Assist system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output, and by selectively applying braking.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. You will also see the VSA activation indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

### VSA Activation Indicator



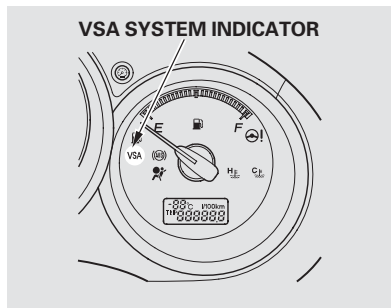
When VSA activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink.





## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System (For some types)

### VSA System Indicator



The VSA system indicator (see page 93) comes on and stays on when there is a problem with the VSA system. The VSA activation indicator will also come on.

If the VSA system indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the VSA system indicator. If the indicator remains on, or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

### VSA Off Switch

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.

CONTINUED

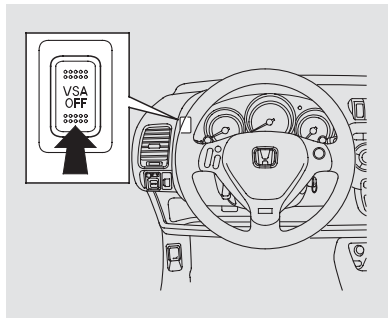
Driving 265







## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System (For some types)



This switch is under the driver's side vent. Press it to turn the Vehicle Stability Assist system on and off.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Pressing the switch again turns the system back on.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### VSA and Tyre Sizes

Driving with varying tyre or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tyres, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tyres (see page 325).

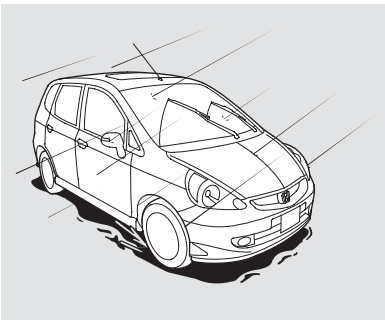
Deactivate the VSA system if you need to drive with the compact spare tyre installed (see page 354).

If you install winter tyres, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.





## Driving in Bad Weather



Rain, fog, and snow conditions require a different driving technique because of reduced traction and visibility. Keep your vehicle well-maintained and exercise greater caution when you need to drive in bad weather.

**Driving Technique** — Always drive slower than you would in dry weather. It takes your vehicle longer to react, even in conditions that may seem just barely damp. Apply smooth, even pressure to all the controls. Abrupt steering wheel movements or sudden, hard application of the brakes can cause loss of control in wet weather. Be extra cautious for the first few kilometers (miles) of driving while you adjust to the change in driving conditions. This is especially true in snow. A person can forget some snow-driving techniques during the summer months. Practice is needed to relearn those skills.

Exercise extra caution when driving in rain after a long dry spell. After months of dry weather, the first rains bring oil to the surface of the roadway, making it slippery.





## Driving in Bad Weather

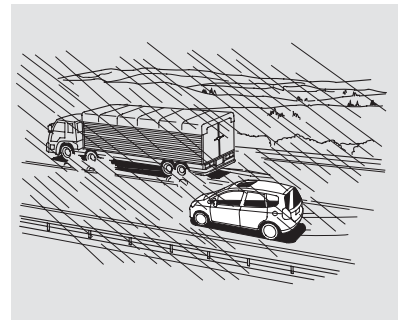
**Visibility** – Being able to see clearly in all directions and being visible to other drivers are important in all weather conditions. This is more difficult in bad weather. To be seen more clearly during daylight hours, turn on your headlights and fog lights.

Inspect your windscreen wipers and washers frequently. Keep the windscreen washer reservoir full of the proper fluid. Have the windscreen wiper blades replaced if they start to streak the windscreen or leave parts unwiped. Use the demister and air conditioning (on some types) to keep the windows from fogging up on the inside (see pages 154 and 165).

**Traction** – Check your tyres frequently for wear and proper pressure. Both are important in preventing “aquaplaning” (loss of traction on a wet surface). In the winter, mount snow tyres on all four wheels for the best handling.

Watch road conditions carefully, they can change from moment to moment. Wet leaves can be as slippery as ice. “Clear” roads can have patches of ice. Driving conditions can be very hazardous when the outside temperature is near freezing. The road surface can become covered with areas of water puddles mixed with areas of ice, so your traction can change without warning.

Be careful when downshifting. If traction is low, you can lock up the drive wheels for a moment and cause a skid.



Be very cautious when passing, or being passed by other vehicles. The spray from large vehicles reduces your visibility, and the wind buffeting can cause you to lose control.

**CAUTION:** *Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.*

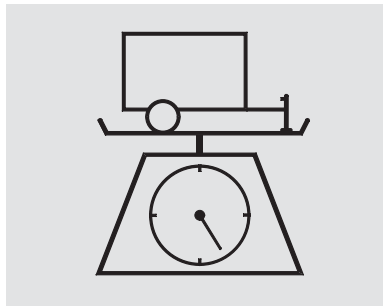




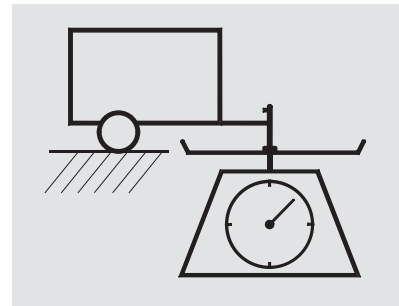
## Towing a Trailer (European models)

Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their luggage. You can use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

### Load Limits



- The total weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes) plus its luggage must not exceed the maximum towing weight. See page 389 .



- The trailer nose load should never exceed 70 kg (155 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for a trailer weights of less than 700 kg (1,550 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

*CONTINUED*

**Driving 269**





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

- For example, if the trailer and its load weigh 225 kg (500 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 22.5 kg (50 lbs). Adjust trailer's luggage to change the trailer nose load. Start by putting approximately 60 percent of the luggage toward the front and 40 percent toward the rear. With a trailer package of more than 700 kg (1,550 lbs), you may need to adjust the luggage weight toward the rear. Never load the trailer so the back is heavier than the front. This takes weight off your vehicle's rear axle and reduces traction.
- The maximum permissible weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 389 .
- The maximum permissible weight is total weight of the vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage and towbar.

- The maximum towing weight must not exceed the specified limit as shown on page 389 .

This weight will be estimated on normal driving below 1,000 meters elevation.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 meters of elevation.

- Please consider that the installation of optionals (and trailer nose load when towing a trailer) will reduce the loading capacity.

Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Exceeding load limits or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.**

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**



## 270 Driving





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

### Checking Loads

The best way to confirm that vehicle and trailer weights are within limits is to have them checked at a public scale.

Using a suitable scale or a special trailer nose load gauge, check the total weight, the weight at each axle and the trailer nose load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully-loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the loads whenever the conditions change.

### Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing can require a variety of equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how it will be used, and how much load you are towing.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in the rest of this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and that it meets the country's regulations where you are driving.

### Towbars

Any towbar used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

Refer to page 388 for the towbar mounting points.

### Safety Chains

Always use safety chains. Make sure they are secured to both the trailer and towbar, and that they cross under the trailer nose so that they can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

CONTINUED

Driving 271





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

---

### **Trailer Brakes**

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### **Trailer Lights**

Your vehicle has a connector to install an optional trailer lighting connector. It is located in the luggage area by the right tail-lights.

You can get an optional trailer lighting connector for your vehicle from your dealer.

Since lighting and wiring vary in trailer type and brand, you should also have a qualified technician install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer.

Always consult your dealer before connecting the trailer lights to your vehicle's lighting system.

## 272 Driving





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

### ***Additional Trailer Equipment***

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when you are towing a trailer. Check the local laws in the country. Even if there are no legal requirements, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

### **Pre-Tow Checklist**

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the tyres, brakes, suspension, and cooling system are in good operating condition.
- If you tow frequently, follow the Severe Conditions maintenance schedule.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits (see pages 269 and 270).
- The towbar, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items on and in the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

- The lights and brakes on your vehicle and the trailer are working properly.

- Your vehicle tyres and spare are properly inflated, and the trailer tyres and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted to 100 km/h (62 mph).







## Towing a Trailer (European models)

---

### **Driving Safely With a Trailer**

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving manoeuvres before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines discussed below.

### **Towing Speeds and Gears**

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers. If you have an automatic transmission (CVT), use the "D" position or 7-speed manual shift mode (for some types) when towing a trailer on level roads. You can select "S" position or 7-speed manual shift mode (for some types) when towing a trailer in hilly terrain. (See "**Driving on Hills**" in the next page for additional gear information.)

### *For some types*

When driving uphill and downhill, use the 7-speed manual shift mode to provide the proper engine power and engine braking on each position. Select seventh, sixth, fifth, fourth, third, second or first position; depending on the vehicle speeds and road conditions.





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

### ***Making Turns and Braking***

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

### ***Driving on Hills***

When climbing hills, closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission (CVT) to overheat.



*CONTINUED*

**Driving 275**





## Towing a Trailer (European models)

---

### *On vehicles with manual transmission*

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and shift down to 2nd gear (manual). Do not “ride” the brakes, and remember it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

Driving on an uphill road of more than 12% slope is not recommended for your vehicle.

We recommend that you tow a trailer on the road recommended by the trailer association.

On vehicles with automatic transmission (CVT), use Low (L) or 7-speed manual shift mode (for some types) to provide engine braking when going down a steep hill.

### ***Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting***

Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause trailer swaying. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

### ***Backing Up***

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel; then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

### ***Parking***

Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in park (automatic) or in 1st or reverse (manual). Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer’s tyres.

### **Towing a Trailer (Except for European models)**

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer.

## 276 Driving





## Maintenance

Regularly maintaining your vehicle is the best way to protect your investment. You will be rewarded with safer, more economical, trouble-free driving. This section lists items that need to be checked regularly and explains how to check them. It also details some simple maintenance tasks you can do yourself. The maintenance schedule shows you when these things need to be done.

Maintenance Schedule.....	278	Battery .....	309
Required Maintenance Record ....	282	Replacing the Battery.....	312
Owner Maintenance Checks.....	283	Wiper Blades.....	314
Fluid Locations.....	284	Air Conditioning System.....	317
Engine Oil.....	286	Dust and Pollen Filter .....	318
Adding Oil.....	286	Replacement.....	318
Recommended Oil.....	286	Drive Belts.....	320
Additives .....	287	Tyres .....	321
Changing the Oil and Filter.....	287	Inflation.....	321
Cooling System .....	290	Inspection .....	322
Adding Engine Coolant.....	290	Maintenance.....	323
Replacing Engine Coolant .....	292	Tyre Rotation .....	323
Windscreen Washers .....	296	Replacing Tyres and Wheels ...	324
Transmission Fluid.....	297	Wheels and Tyres.....	325
Automatic		Winter Tyres .....	326
Transmission (CVT) .....	297	Tyre Chains .....	326
Manual Transmission .....	299	Lights .....	328
Brake and Clutch Fluid.....	299	Headlight Aiming .....	330
Brake System .....	300	Headlights with High Voltage	
Clutch System .....	300	Discharge Tubes .....	330
Air Cleaner Element.....	301	Replacing Bulbs .....	330
Fuel Filter .....	302	Storing Your Vehicle .....	342
Bonnet Latch.....	302		
Spark Plugs.....	303		
Replacement.....	303, 306		
Specifications .....	305, 308		





## Maintenance Schedule

---

The Required Maintenance Schedule specifies all maintenance required to keep your vehicle in peak operating condition. Maintenance work should be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of Honda by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorized dealer meets all of these requirements.

In EU countries, follow the Maintenance Schedule in the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle.

The services and time or distance intervals shown in the maintenance schedule assume you will use your vehicle as normal transportation for passengers and their possessions. You should also follow these recommendations:

- Avoid exceeding your vehicle's load limit. This puts excess strain on the engine, brakes, and many other parts of your vehicle.
- Operate your vehicle on reasonable roads within the legal speed limit.
- Drive your vehicle regularly over a distance of several kilometers (miles).
- Always use the recommended fuel only (see page 230).

We recommend the use of genuine Honda parts and fluids or their equivalent whenever you have maintenance done. These are the same high-quality items that went into your vehicle when it was new, so you can be sure they fit and perform flawlessly.





## Maintenance Schedule (Except EU)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months									
Clean air cleaner element (Dry type only)	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)										
Replace air cleaner element	Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles)										
Inspect valve clearance	Every 40,000 km (25,000 miles)										
Replace fuel filter* <sup>2</sup>				•					•		
Replace spark plugs	Iridium type	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)									
	Normal type	Every 40,000 km (25,000 miles)									
Inspect and adjust drive belts		•			•				•		•
Inspect idle speed							•				
Replace engine coolant	200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										

\* 1 : Refer to page 281 for replacement information under severe conditions.

\* 2 : Refer to page 302 for replacement information under driving conditions.

This Maintenance Schedule outlines the *minimum* required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the trouble-free operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

CONTINUED

Maintenance 279





## Maintenance Schedule (Except EU)

Service at the indicated distance or time – whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000		12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid*1	M/T	Normal						•				
		Severe			•			•			•	
	CVT	Normal				•			•			•
		Severe		•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months											
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years											
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•	•
Replace dust and pollen filter (if equipped)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Rotate tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles)											
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b>												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months											
Suspension components												
Driveshaft boots												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system												
Fuel lines and connections												

\* 1 : Refer to page 281 for replacement information under severe conditions.





## Maintenance Schedule (Except EU)

### **Severe Driving Conditions**

If you drive your vehicle under one or more of the following severe conditions, the items described below must be serviced according to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

### **Severe Conditions:**

- A: Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip, or in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.
- B: Driving in extremely hot [over 35°C (95°F)] conditions.
- C: Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- D: Trailer towing (if applicable), driving with a loaded roof rack, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- E: Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.
- F: Driving more than 20,000 km (12,500 miles) per year, or driving at high speed frequently.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E
Transmission fluid M/T	B, D
CVT	B, C, D, F







## Required Maintenance Record (Except EU)

Have your servicing dealer record all Required Maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

<b>20,000 km</b> 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date	<b>120,000 km</b> 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date
<b>40,000 km</b> 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date	<b>140,000 km</b> 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date
<b>60,000 km</b> 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date	<b>160,000 km</b> 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date
<b>80,000 km</b> 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date	<b>180,000 km</b> 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date
<b>100,000 km</b> 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date	<b>200,000 km</b> 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)	(Sign or Stamp)	Km (Mi.) or Month ----- Date

### 282 Maintenance





## Owner's Maintenance Checks

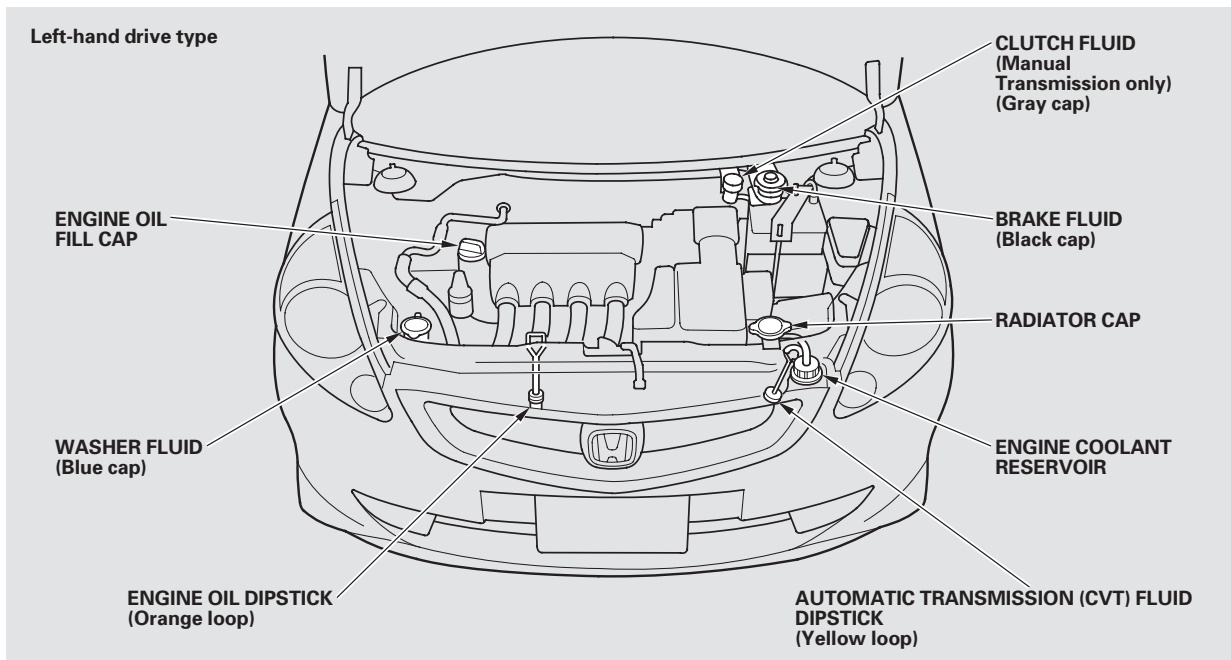
You should check the following items at the use or specified intervals.

- Engine oil level – Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 234 .
- Engine coolant level – Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 236 .
- Windscreen washer fluid – Check the level in the reservoir monthly. If weather conditions cause you to use the washers frequently, check the reservoir each time you stop for fuel. See page 296 .
- Windscreen wipers – Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wipers do not wipe the windscreen securely, check them for wear, cracks, and other damage.
- Automatic transmission (CVT) – Check the fluid level monthly. See page 297 .
- Brakes and clutch – Check the fluid level monthly. See page 299 .
- Brake pedal – Check the brake pedal for smooth operation.
- Parking brake – Check the parking brake lever for smooth operation.
- Tyres – Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 321 .
- Battery – Check its condition and the terminals for corrosion monthly. See page 309 .
- Air conditioning system (on some types) – Check its operation weekly. See page 317 .
- Windscreen demister – Operate the heater and air conditioning and check the demister vents monthly.
- Lights – Check the operation of the headlights, position lights, tail-lights, high-mount brake light, turn signals, brake lights and licence plate lights monthly. See page 328 .
- Doors – Check the tailgate and all doors including the rear doors for smooth opening/closing and secure locking.
- Horn – Check the horn operation.



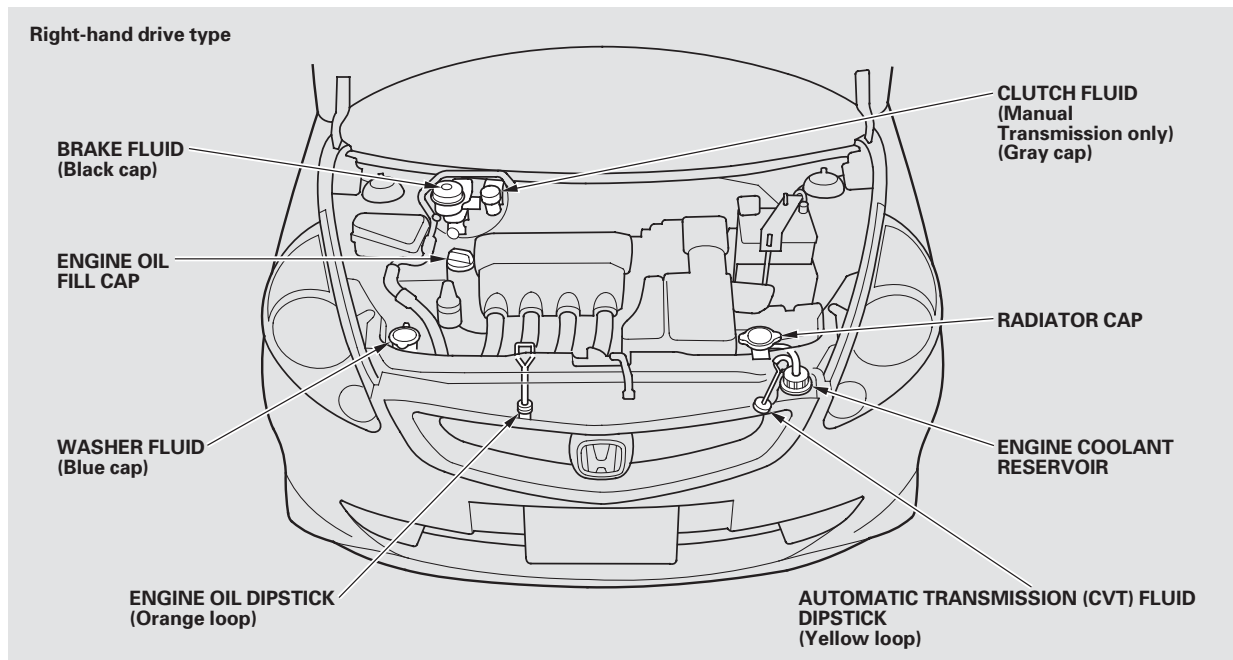


## Fluid Locations





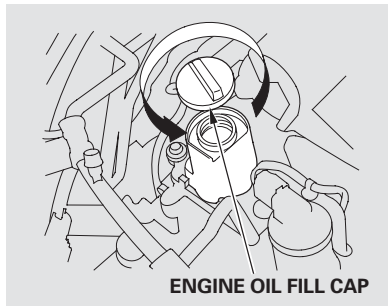
## Fluid Locations





## Engine Oil

### Adding Oil



To add oil, unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil, and install the engine oil fill cap. Tighten it securely. Let the engine warm up and turn off the engine, let it sit for approximately 3 minutes, then check the oil level. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Pour the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

### Recommended Oil

#### *European models*

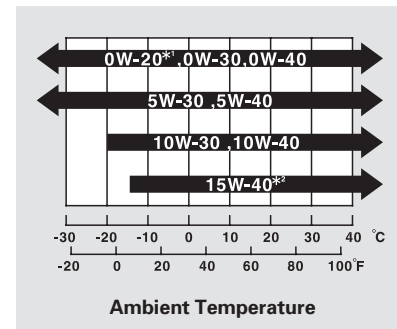
Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil, "ACEA A1/B1," "ACEA A3/B3," or "ACEA A5/B5." in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

#### *Except for European models*

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade detergent oil. It is highly recommended that you use genuine Honda Motor Oil in your vehicle for as long as you own it.

Select the proper SAE viscosity oil for your vehicle according to this chart:

Always use a fuel-efficient oil that says "API Service SL or higher grade." This oil is formulated to help your engine use less fuel.



\* 1: European models

\* 2: Except for European models





## Engine Oil

### Additives

Your vehicle does not need any oil additives. Purchasing additives for the engine or transmission will not increase your vehicle's performance or longevity. It only increases the cost of operating your vehicle.

### Changing the Oil and Filter

Always change the oil and filter according to the time and distance (kilometers/miles) recommendations in the maintenance schedule. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled technician.

### CAUTION

**Repeated, prolonged exposure to used motor oil may cause skin cancer.**

**Wash your hands thoroughly with strong soap as soon as possible after handling used oil.**



CONTINUED

Maintenance **287**





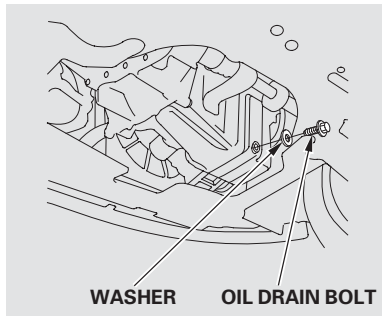
## Engine Oil

1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.

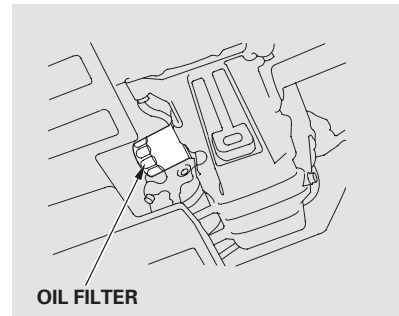
### **CAUTION**

**The oil, engine components and the exhaust system are hot and can burn you.**

**Use caution and wear protective clothing while working in the engine compartment.**



2. Open the bonnet and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.



3. Remove the oil filter and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench is required to remove the filter.
4. Check the oil filter to make sure its gasket did not stick to the engine block. A stuck gasket could cause an oil leak.
5. Install a new oil filter according to instructions that come with it.





## Engine Oil

6. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.  
Tighten it to:  
**39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m , 29 lbf·ft)**

7. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

Engine oil change capacity  
(including filter):  
**3.6 ℓ (3.8 US qt , 3.2 Imp qt)**

8. Replace the engine oil fill cap.  
Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator light should go out within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine and reinspect your work.

9. Run the engine until warmed up, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

10. Turn off the engine, let it sit for approximately 3 minutes, then check the oil level. If necessary, add oil to bring the level to the upper mark on the dipstick.

### NOTICE

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container and take it to a recycling centre. Do not discard it in a waste bin or dump it on the ground.

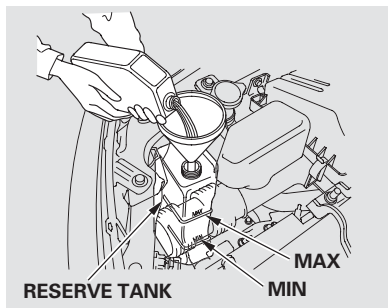






## Cooling System

### Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks. The coolant you add should always be a mixture of 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

Always use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. It does not require any additional mixing. The cooling system contains many aluminium components that can corrode if an improper antifreeze is used. Some antifreeze, even though labelled as safe for aluminium parts, may not provide adequate protection.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.**

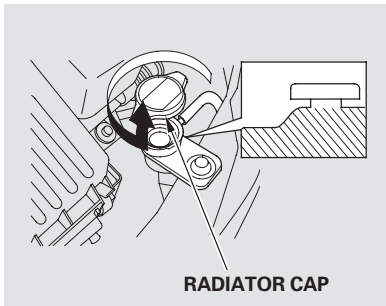
**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap anticlockwise, without pressing down on it, until it stops. This relieves any pressure remaining in the cooling system.
3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning anticlockwise.





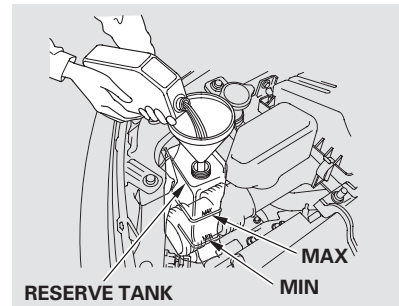
## Cooling System



4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled coolant could damage components in the engine compartment.

5. Put the radiator cap back on. Tighten it fully.



6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.





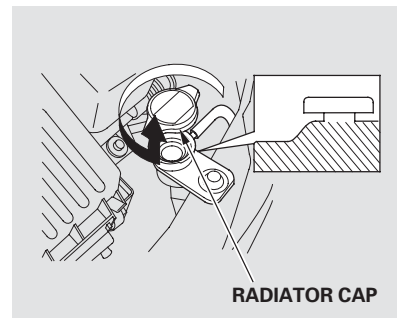
## Cooling System

### Replacing Engine Coolant

The cooling system should be completely drained and refilled with new coolant according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule. Only use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. Use of any non-Honda coolant or plain water can result in corrosion and deposits in the cooling system.

Draining the coolant requires access to the underside of the vehicle. Unless you have the tools and knowledge, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled technician.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn the temperature control dial to maximum heat. Turn the ignition off.
2. Open the bonnet. Make sure the engine and the radiator are cool to touch.

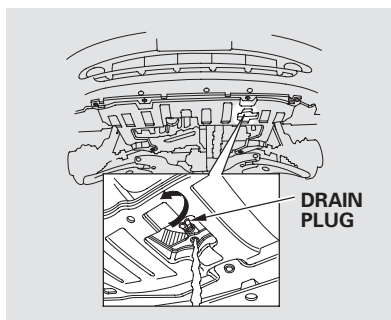


3. Remove the radiator cap.

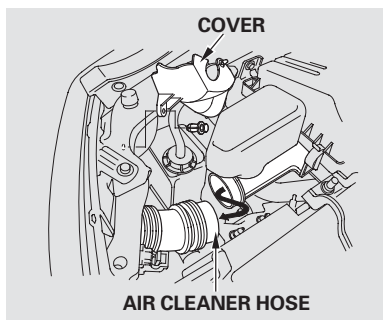




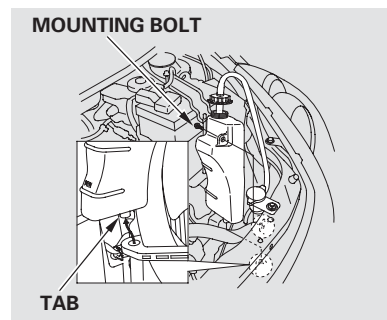
## Cooling System



4. Loosen the drain plug on the bottom of the radiator. The coolant will drain through the splash guard.



5. To remove the reserve tank to drain the coolant, remove the air cleaner hose, and remove the cover (see page 332).



6. Remove the reserve tank cap, and remove the mounting bolt with a wrench. Then remove the reserve tank from its holder by pulling it straight up and drain the coolant into an appropriate container.

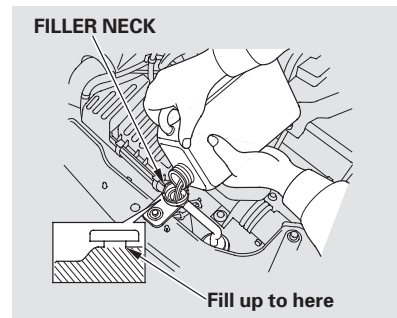
*CONTINUED*





## Cooling System

7. Put the reserve tank back in place. Reinstall and tighten the mounting bolt securely.
8. Reinstall the air cleaner hose, cover and reserve tank cap.
9. When the coolant stops draining, tighten the drain plug at the bottom of the radiator.



10. Pour genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 into the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. This coolant is a mixture of 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Pre-mixing is not required.





## Cooling System

The cooling system capacity is:

*With 5-speed Manual Transmission:*

3.9 ℓ (1.03 US gal , 0.86 Imp gal) \*<sup>1</sup>

3.3 ℓ (0.87 US gal , 0.73 Imp gal) \*<sup>2</sup>

(For engine type: L12A1, L12A3,  
L13A1, L13A2, L13A4, L13A5)

3.8 ℓ (1.00 US gal , 0.84 Imp gal)

(For engine type: L15A1, L15A6)

3.7 ℓ (0.98 US gal , 0.81 Imp gal)

(For engine type: GD1)

*With Continuously Variable  
Transmission (CVT):*

3.8 ℓ (1.00 US gal , 0.84 Imp gal) \*<sup>1</sup>

3.2 ℓ (0.85 US gal , 0.70 Imp gal) \*<sup>2</sup>

(For engine type: L12A1, L12A3,  
L13A1, L13A2, L13A4, L13A5)

3.7 ℓ (0.98 US gal , 0.81 Imp gal)

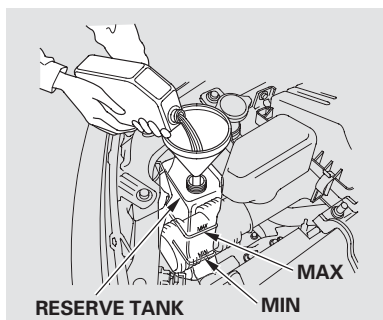
(For engine type: L15A1, L15A6)

3.6 ℓ (0.95 US gal , 0.79 Imp gal)

(For engine type: GD1)

\* 1 : With air conditioning system

\* 2 : Without air conditioning  
system



11. Start the engine and let it run for about 30 seconds. Then turn off the engine.
12. Check the level in the radiator, add coolant if needed.
13. Fill the reserve tank to the MAX mark. Install the reserve tank cap.
14. Install the radiator cap, and tighten it to the first stop.

15. Start the engine and let it run until the radiator cooling fan comes on at least twice. Then stop the engine.

16. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool to touch.

Remove the radiator cap. Fill the radiator with coolant up to the base of the filler neck.

17. Start the engine and hold it at 1,500 rpm until the radiator fan comes on. Turn off the engine. Check the coolant level in the radiator and add coolant if needed.

18. Install the radiator cap, and tighten it fully.

19. If necessary, fill the reserve tank to the MAX mark. Install the reserve tank cap.

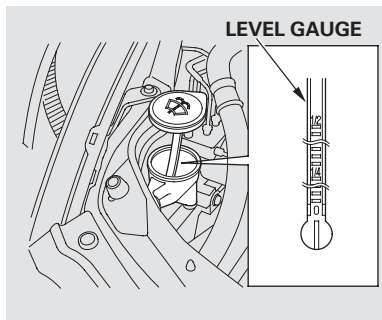




## Windscreen Washers

Check the level in the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use. In bad weather, when you use the washers often, check the level every time you stop for fuel. This reservoir supplies the windscreen and rear window washers.

The windscreen washer reservoir is located behind the headlight.



Check the reservoir's fluid level by removing the cap and looking at the level gauge attached to the cap.

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windscreen washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windscreen wiper blades with windscreen washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition the blade edges.

### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.

Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially-available windscreen washer fluid.



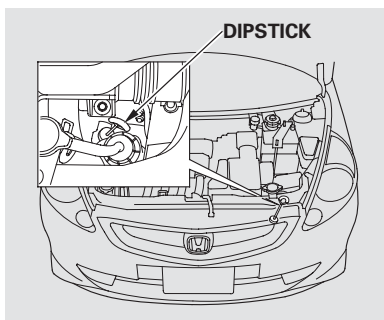


## Transmission Fluid

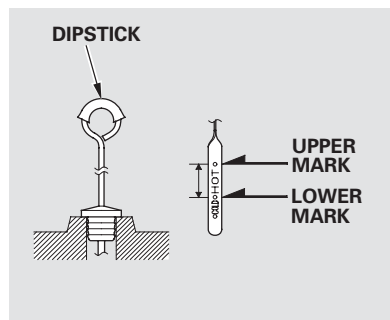
### Automatic Transmission (CVT) Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT)

The engine and transmission must be at normal operating temperature before checking the fluid level.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine and hold it at 1,500 rpm until the radiator fan comes on and rotate it twice. Shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait at least 60 seconds, and no more than 90 seconds, after shutting off the engine to check the fluid level.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the HOT upper and lower marks.

CONTINUED

Maintenance 297







## Transmission Fluid

---

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the filler hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.
6. To check the accurate level, start the engine again. Hold it at 1,500 rpm until the radiator fan comes on and rotate it twice.

Always use genuine Honda CVT (Continuously Variable Transmission) Fluid.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled fluid could damage components in the engine compartment.

*For EU models*

If you drive at high speed in high temperatures [above 35°C (95°F)], the transmission fluid should be changed when you reach 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 2 years, whichever comes first.

7. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

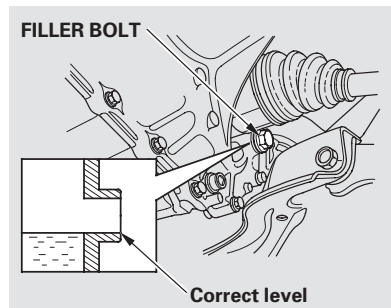
If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.





## Transmission Fluid, Brake and Clutch Fluid

### Manual Transmission



Check the fluid level with the transmission at normal operating temperature and the vehicle sitting on level ground. Remove the transmission filler bolt and carefully feel inside the bolt hole with your finger. The fluid level should be up to the edge of the bolt hole. If it is not, add genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it starts to run out of the hole. Reinstall the filler bolt and tighten it securely.

If genuine Honda MTF is not available, you may use an API service SJ or higher grade motor oil with a viscosity of SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled fluid could damage components in the engine compartment.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

### Brake and Clutch Fluid

Check the fluid level in the reservoirs monthly. There are up to two reservoirs, depending on the model. They are:

- Brake fluid reservoir (all models)
- Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission only)

The brake fluid should be replaced according to the time recommendation in the maintenance schedule.

Always use genuine Honda Brake Fluid or an equivalent from a sealed container that is marked DOT3 or DOT4 only. Brake fluid marked DOT5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system.

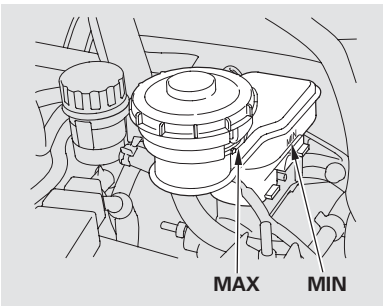
If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.





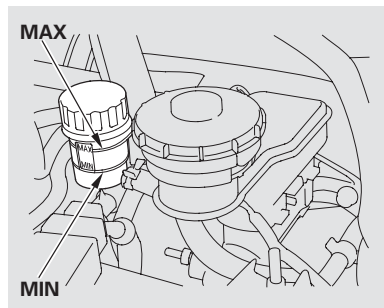
## Brake and Clutch Fluid

### Brake System



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

### Clutch System (Manual transmission only)



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

Low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.





## Air Cleaner Element

The air cleaner element should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

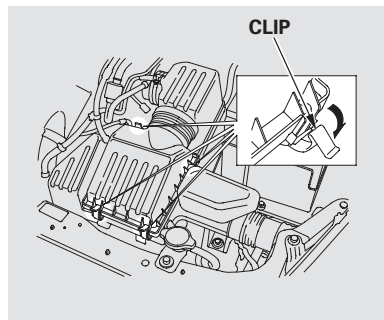
### Cleaning

*On vehicles with dry type air cleaner element*

The air cleaner element should also be cleaned according to the maintenance schedule.

Clean the air cleaner element by blowing compressed air through it in the opposite direction to normal air flow. If you do not have access to compressed air (such as a service station), ask your dealer to do this service.

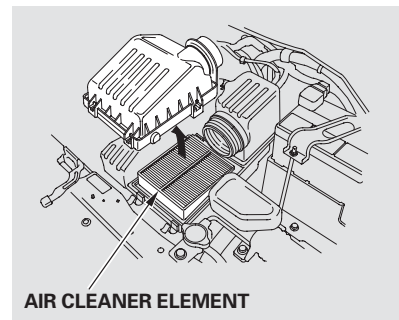
Follow the replacement procedure for removal and reinstallation.



The air cleaner element is inside the air cleaner housing on the right side of the engine compartment.

To replace it:

1. Unsnap the four clips and remove the air cleaner housing cover.



2. Remove the old air cleaner element.

3. Carefully clean the inside of the air cleaner housing with a damp rag.

4. Place the new air cleaner element in the air cleaner housing.

5. Reinstall the air cleaner housing cover and snap the four clips back into place.





## Fuel Filter, Bonnet Latch

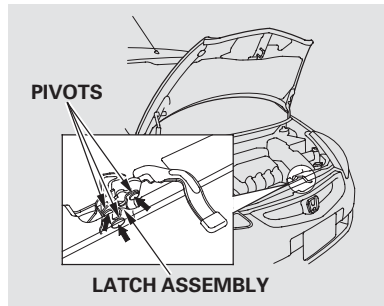
### Fuel Filter

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km (25,000 miles), or 2 years (except EU), if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Since the fuel system is under pressure, fuel can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### Bonnet Latch



Clean the bonnet latch assembly with a mild cleaner, then lubricate it with a multipurpose grease. Lubricate all the moving parts (as shown), including the pivot. If you are not sure how to clean and grease the latch, contact your dealer.

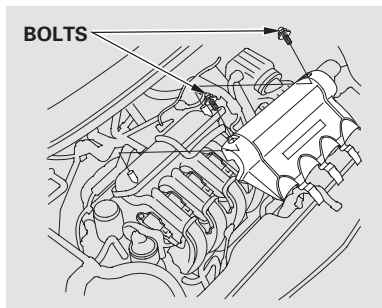




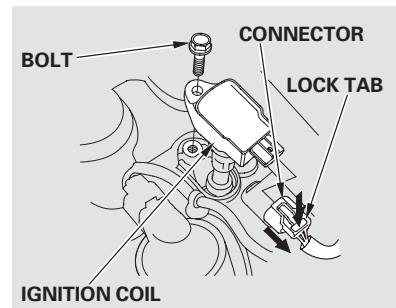
## Spark Plugs

The spark plugs in your vehicle should be replaced according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

### **Replacement** (Except 1.5 l SOHC VTEC engine model)



1. Remove the two holding bolts by using a wrench. Remove the cover by pulling it straight up.
2. Clean off any dirt and oil that have collected around the ignition coils.



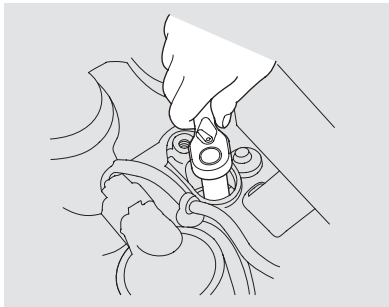
3. Use a wrench to remove the bolt holding the ignition coil. Remove the ignition coil by pulling it straight out.
4. Disconnect the wire connector from the ignition coil by pushing on the lock tab and pulling on the connector. Pull on the plastic connector, not the wires.

*CONTINUED*

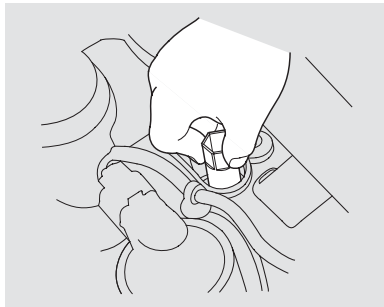




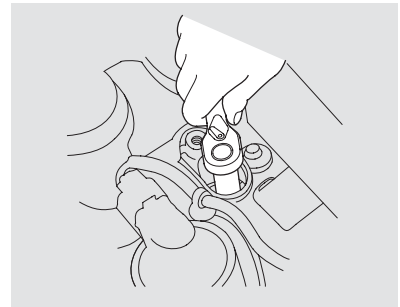
## Spark Plugs



5. Remove the spark plug with a 16 mm (5/8 inch) spark plug socket.



6. Put the new spark plug into the socket, then screw it into the hole. Screw it in by hand so you do not crossthread it.



7. Torque the spark plug. (If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the spark plug 2/3 of a turn after it contacts the cylinder head.)  
Tightening torque:  
18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft)





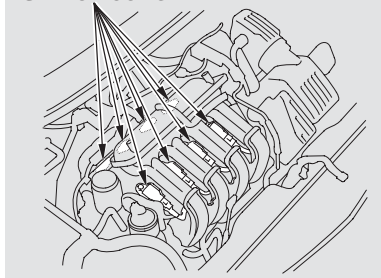
## Spark Plugs

### NOTICE

Tighten the spark plugs carefully. A spark plug that is too loose can overheat and damage the engine. Overtightening can cause damage to the threads in the cylinder head.

8. Install the ignition coil. Reinstall the bolt.
9. Push the wire connector onto the ignition coil. Make sure it locks in place.

IGNITION COILS



10. Repeat this procedure for the other seven spark plugs.
11. Reinstall the cover. Secure the cover by tightening the two holding bolts with a wrench.

### Specifications:

*1.2 l engine model, 1.3 l engine model, 1.4 l engine model and 1.5 l SOHC engine model*

NGK: BKR6E-11

DENSO: K20PR-U11

### Spark Plug Gap:

1.1 mm (0.04 in)  $^{+0}_{-0.1 \text{ mm}}$

CONTINUED

Maintenance **305**

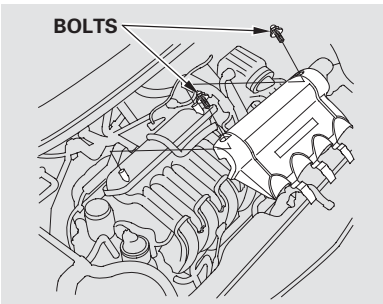




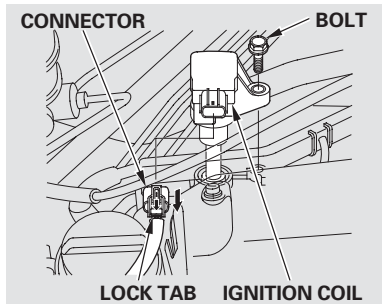


## Spark Plugs

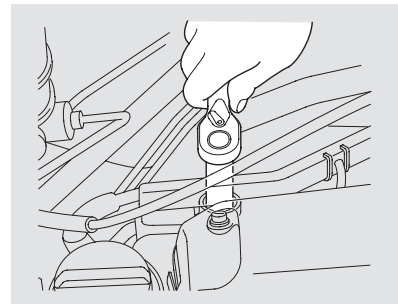
### **Replacement** (1.5 l SOHC VTEC engine model)



1. Remove the two holding bolts by using a wrench. Remove the cover by pulling it straight up.
2. Clean off any dirt and oil that have collected around the ignition coils.



3. Use a wrench to remove the bolt holding the ignition coil. Remove the ignition coil by pulling it straight out.
4. Disconnect the wire connector from the ignition coil by pushing on the lock tab and pulling on the connector. Pull on the plastic connector, not the wires.

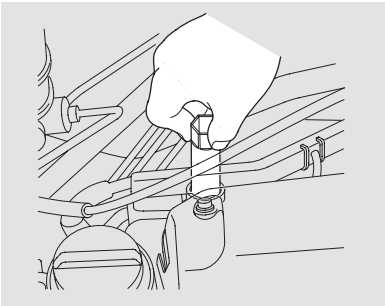


5. Remove the spark plug with a 16 mm (5/8 inch) spark plug socket.

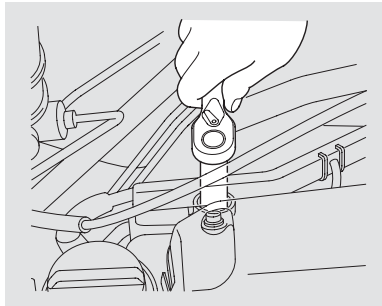




## Spark Plugs



6. Put the new spark plug into the socket, then screw it into the hole. Screw it in by hand so you do not crossthead it.



7. Torque the spark plug. (If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the spark plug 2/3 of a turn after it contacts the cylinder head.)  
Tightening torque:  
18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m , 13 lbf·ft)

### NOTICE

Tighten the spark plugs carefully. A spark plug that is too loose can overheat and damage the engine. Overtightening can cause damage to the threads in the cylinder head.

8. Push the wire connector onto the ignition coil. Make sure it locks in place.
9. Install the ignition coil. Reinstall the bolt.

*CONTINUED*

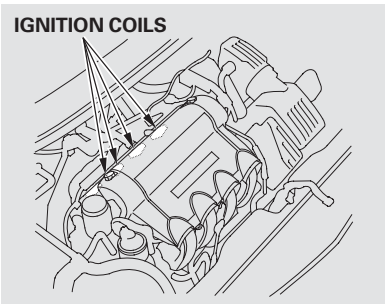
**Maintenance 307**





## Spark Plugs

**IGNITION COILS**



10. Repeat this procedure for the other three spark plugs.
11. Reinstall the cover. Secure the cover by tightening the two holding bolts with a wrench.

### Specifications:

#### *1.5 l SOHC VTEC engine model*

NGK: IZFR6K13  
DENSO: SKJ20DR-M13

Iridium spark plug does not need the gap adjustment.

#### *Brazil, Argentina, Chile models*

NGK: ZFR6J-11  
DENSO: KJ20CR-L11

Spark Plug Gap:  
1.1 mm (0.04 in)<sup>+0</sup><sub>-0.1 mm</sub>





## Battery

Check the condition of your vehicle's battery monthly. You should check the colour of the test indicator window, and for corrosion on the terminals.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation. A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.**

**Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.**

**Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.**

### **⚠ WARNING**

**The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.**

**Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.**

**Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.**

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

### **Emergency Procedures**

**Eyes** – Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin** – Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing** – Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

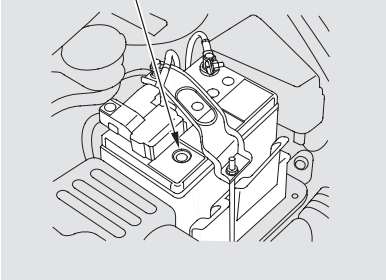
*CONTINUED*





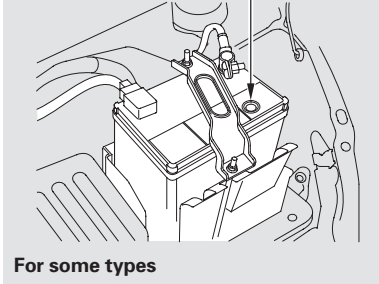
## Battery

**TEST INDICATOR WINDOW**



Check the battery condition by looking at the test indicator window on the battery. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colours.

**TEST INDICATOR WINDOW**



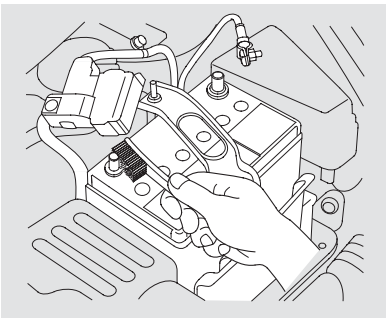
For some types

Check the battery terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

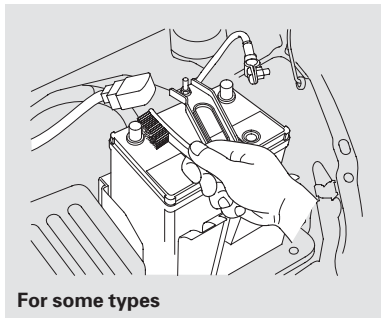




## Battery



If the terminals are severely corroded, clean them with baking soda and water. Then use a wrench to loosen and remove the cables from the terminals. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first and reconnect it last. Clean the battery terminals with a terminal cleaning tool or wire brush. Reconnect and tighten the cables, then coat the terminals with grease.



For some types

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

*On vehicles with driver's window auto feature*

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the AUTO feature of the driver's window will be disabled. You should reset the AUTO feature (see page 135 ).

CONTINUED

Maintenance **311**





## Battery, Replacing the Battery

### NOTICE

Charging the battery with the cables connected can seriously damage your vehicle's electronic controls. Detach the battery cables before connecting the battery to a charger.

#### *On vehicles with audio system*

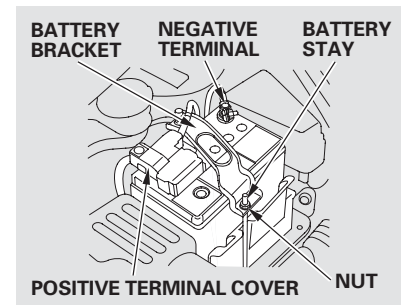
When the battery is disconnected, the clock setting in the audio system will be cancelled. You will need to reset the clock according to the instructions of the audio system.

### NOTICE

#### *On vehicles with automatic transmission (For some types)*

Whenever the battery has been disconnected, wait more than 10 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before you start the engine.

### Replacing the Battery



#### *(For EU countries)*

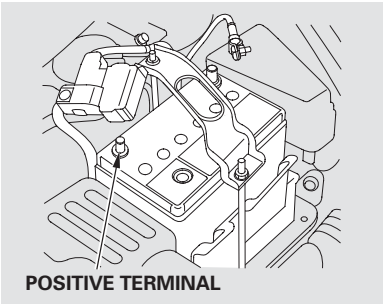
When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance instructions.

1. Make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.
2. Open the bonnet.





## Replacing the Battery



3. Loosen the bolt on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

4. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the bolt on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.
5. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
6. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
7. Remove the battery cover.
8. Take out the battery carefully.

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.



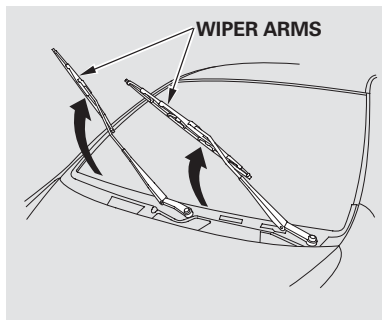




## Wiper Blades

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months. Look for signs of cracking in the rubber, or areas that are getting hard. Replace the blades if you find these signs, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

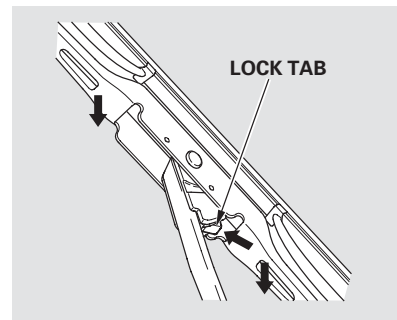
To replace the front wiper blades:



1. Raise the wiper arm off the windscreen. Raise the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the bonnet and the arms.

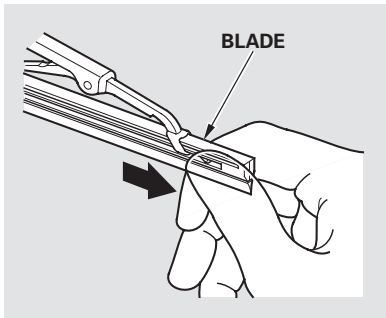


2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pushing in the lock tab. Hold the lock tab in while you push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.

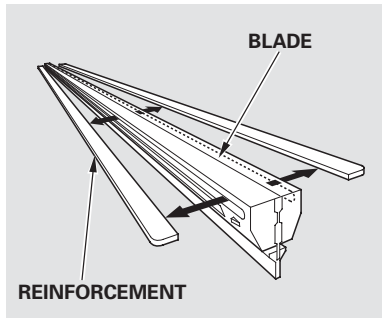




## Wiper Blades



3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the closed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the open end comes out of the holder.



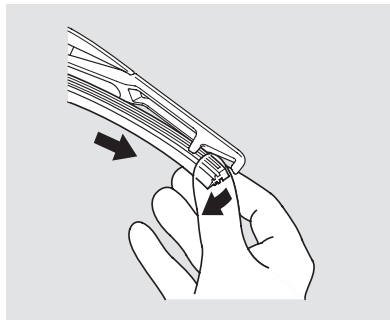
4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder fully.
6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windscreen. Lower the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.



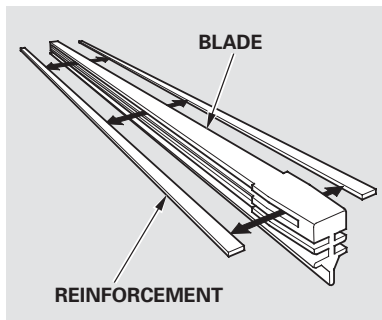


## Wiper Blades

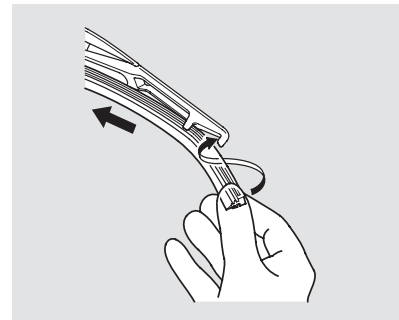


To replace the rear wiper blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.
2. Pull one end of the blade out from the holder.
3. Slide the blade out of the holder.



4. Examine the new wiper blade. If it has no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.
5. Slide the new blade into the holder. Make sure it is engaged in the slot along its full length.



6. Insert both ends of the blade into the holder. Make sure they are secure.
7. Lower the wiper arm.

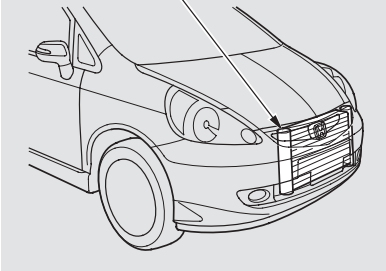
### 316 Maintenance





## Air Conditioning System (For some types)

### AIR CONDITIONING CONDENSER



Your vehicle's air conditioning is a sealed system. Any major maintenance, such as recharging, should be done by a qualified technician. You can do a couple of things to make sure the air conditioning works efficiently.

Periodically check the engine's radiator and air conditioning condenser for leaves, insects, and dirt stuck to the front surface. These block the air flow and reduce cooling efficiency. Use a light spray from a hose or a soft brush to remove them.

#### NOTICE

The condenser and radiator fins bend easily. Only use a low-pressure spray or soft-bristle brush to clean them.

Run the air conditioning at least once a week during the cold weather months. Run it for at least 10 minutes while you are driving at a steady speed with the engine at normal operating temperature. This circulates the lubricating oil contained in the refrigerant.

If the air conditioning does not get as cold as before, have your dealer check the system. Recharge the system with Refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

#### NOTICE

Whenever you have the air conditioning system serviced, make sure the service facility uses a refrigerant recycling system. This system captures the refrigerant for reuse. Releasing refrigerant into the atmosphere can damage the environment.





## Dust and Pollen Filter (For some types)

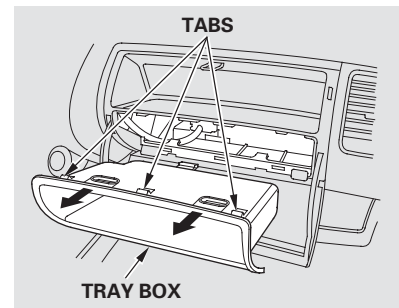
The dust and pollen filter removes pollen and dust that is brought in from the outside through the heating and cooling system/climate control system.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance in this owner's manual.

In EU countries, follow the Maintenance Schedule in the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle.

The dust and pollen filter should be replaced at short intervals if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and diesel-powered vehicles. Replace it more often if air flow from the heating and cooling system/climate control system becomes less than usual.

### Replacement



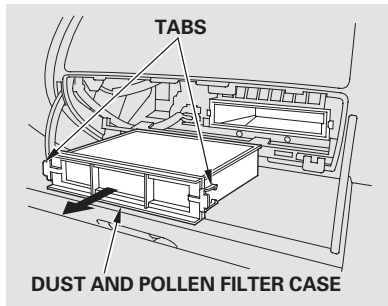
The dust and pollen filter is located behind the glove box.  
To replace it:

1. Open the glove box.
2. Remove the tray box by pulling the three tabs.

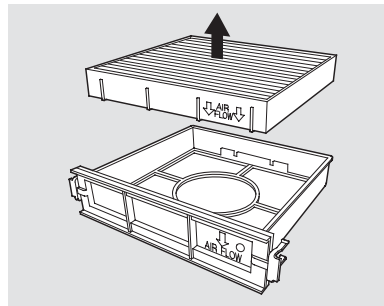




## Dust and Pollen Filter (For some types)



3. Remove the dust and pollen filter case behind the tray box by pulling the tabs on each side of the case.



4. Remove the filter by pulling it straight out of the filter case.

5. Install the new filter. Reinstall the filter case and tray box. Make sure the arrows of the "AIR FLOW" marks on the filter point to the air flow direction (downward).

6. Close the glove box.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by your dealer.

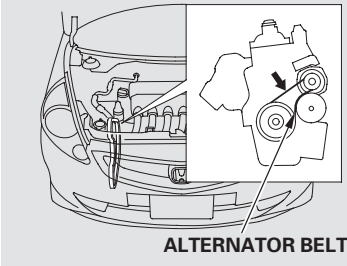




## Drive Belts

### Drive Belts

On vehicles without A/C

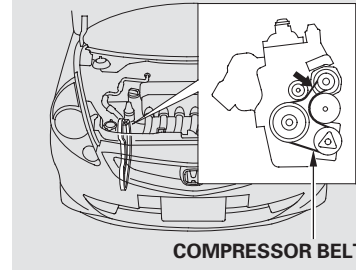


ALTERNATOR BELT

Check the condition of the drive belts. Examine the edges of each belt for cracks or fraying. Check the tension of the belt by pushing on it with your thumb midway between the pulleys.

On vehicles with Electric Power Steering (EPS), there is no power steering belt. Check the compressor belt only (the alternator belt on vehicles without air conditioning system).

On vehicles with A/C



COMPRESSOR BELT

(On vehicles without A/C)  
Alternator belt:  
7.5 – 10.5 mm (0.30 – 0.41 in)

(On vehicles with A/C)  
Compressor belt:  
2.0 – 4.5 mm (0.08 – 0.18 in)





## Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated. The following pages give more detailed information on how and when to check air pressure, how to inspect your tyres for damage and wear, and what to do when your tyres need to be replaced.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.**

### **Inflation**

Keeping the tyres properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort. Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated. Overinflated tyres can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

We recommend that you visually check your tyres every day. If you think a tyre might be low, check it immediately with a tyre gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure at least once a month. Even tyres that are in good condition may lose 7 to 15 kPa (0.07 to 0.15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1 to 2 psi) per month. Remember to check the spare tyre at the same time you check all the other tyres.

Check the pressure in the tyres when they are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours. If you have to drive the vehicle before checking the tyre pressure, the tyres can still be considered "cold" if you drive less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

If you check the pressure when the tyres are hot [the vehicle has been driven several kilometers (miles)], you will see readings 30 to 40 kPa (0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4 to 6 psi) higher than the cold reading. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the specified cold pressure. The tyre will be underinflated.

*CONTINUED*







## Tyres

You should use your own tyre pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tyre pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tyre problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

### **Recommended Tyre Pressures**

The recommended cold tyre pressures are given on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

Tubeless tyres have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured. However, because leakage is often very slow, you should look closely for punctures if a tyre starts losing pressure.

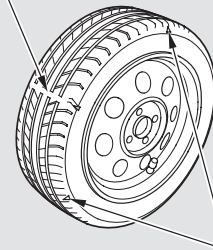
### **Inspection**

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tyres for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.

### **TREAD WEAR INDICATOR**



### **INDICATOR LOCATION MARKS**

Your vehicle's tyres have wear indicators moulded into the tread. When the tread wears down to that point, you will see a 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) wide band running across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) of tread left on the tyre. A tyre that is this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tyre if you can see the tread wear indicator in three or more places around the tyre.





## Tyres

### Maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

The tyres were properly balanced by the factory. They may need to be rebalanced at some time before they are worn out. Have your dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel for repair.

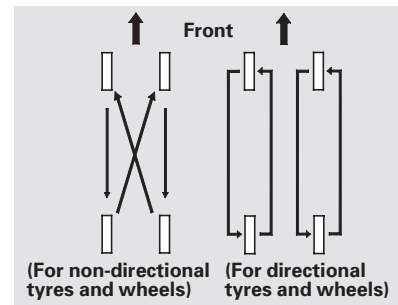
Make sure the installer balances the wheels when you have new tyres installed. This increases riding comfort and tyre life. Your vehicle's original tyres were dynamic or "spin" balanced at the factory. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

### NOTICE

*(Only on vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels)*

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only genuine Honda wheel weights for balancing.

### Tyre Rotation



To help increase tyre life and distribute wear more evenly, you should have the tyres rotated every 10,000 km (6,250 miles). Move the tyres to the positions shown in the charts each time they are rotated. The above illustration shows how the tyres should be rotated on the vehicles equipped with a compact spare tyre or when the normal spare tyre is not included in the tyre rotation. *CONTINUED*



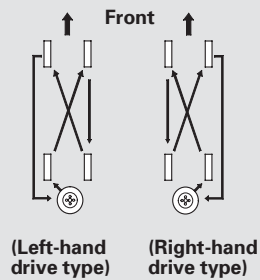


## Tyres

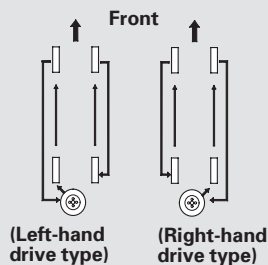
When shopping for replacement tyres, you may find that some tyres are “directional.” This means they are designed to rotate only in one direction. If you use directional tyres, they should be rotated only front-to-back.

Refer to the illustrations in the next column when the normal spare tyre is also rotated.

### For non-directional tyres and wheels



### For directional tyres and wheels



### Replacing Tyres and Wheels

The tyres that came with your vehicle were selected to match the performance capabilities of the vehicle while providing the best combination of handling, ride comfort, and long life. You should replace them with radial tyres of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre’s sidewall). Mixing radial and bias-ply tyres on your vehicle can reduce its braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy.





## Tyres

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.**

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, then replace the two front tyres or the two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

The ABS and VSA (if equipped) work by comparing the speed of the wheels. When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tyre size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to work inconsistently.

If you ever need to replace a wheel, make sure the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheel that came on your vehicle. Replacement wheels are available at your dealer. Consult your dealer before replacing tyres.

### **Wheels and Tyres**

Wheels:  
14 x 5 1/2 JJ  
15 x 6 JJ

Tyres:  
175/65R14 82T  
185/55R15 82V  
185/55R15 82H \*

The sizes of wheels and tyres installed on your vehicle vary depending on models.

\*: These tyres can be used in the same manner as the standard tyres.

See the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb or ask your dealer for information on the proper size of the tyres on your vehicle.





## Tyres

---

### Winter Tyres

Because of the limited qualification for limited use of summer tyres we recommend the use of winter tyres (M+S tyres) on snowy and icy roads. If M+S tyres are installed, all 4 wheels should be equipped to insure safe driving. Use only tyres of the same brand with the same profile. Pay attention to the tyre size, load capacity and speed class when buying.

Install the winter tyres according to the remarks in the registration paper. According to the EEC Directive for types, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the max. designed for speed of the vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of the winter tyres. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If any questions arise, please discuss these with one of our dealers.

### Tyre Chains

Use snow chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area. Install the snow chains on the front wheels. Use greater caution when driving with snow chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains. Some snow chains may damage the vehicle's tyres, wheels, suspension and body. Choose only fine linked chains which guarantee enough free space between the tyre and the other vehicle parts in the wheelhouse. Pay attention to the sectional assembly view and other directions from the chain manufacturer. Consult your dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.





## Tyres

When you have installed tyre chains, drive at less than 30 km/h (19 mph) on roads covered with snow or ice. To minimize tyre and chain wear, avoid driving on cleared roads with chains installed.

(EU models)

Use only the specified chains or their equivalents for your tyres as listed.

Tyre Size	Chain Type
175/65R14*	RUD Matic classic 48473 or equivalents
185/55R15	RUD Matic classic 48476 or equivalents

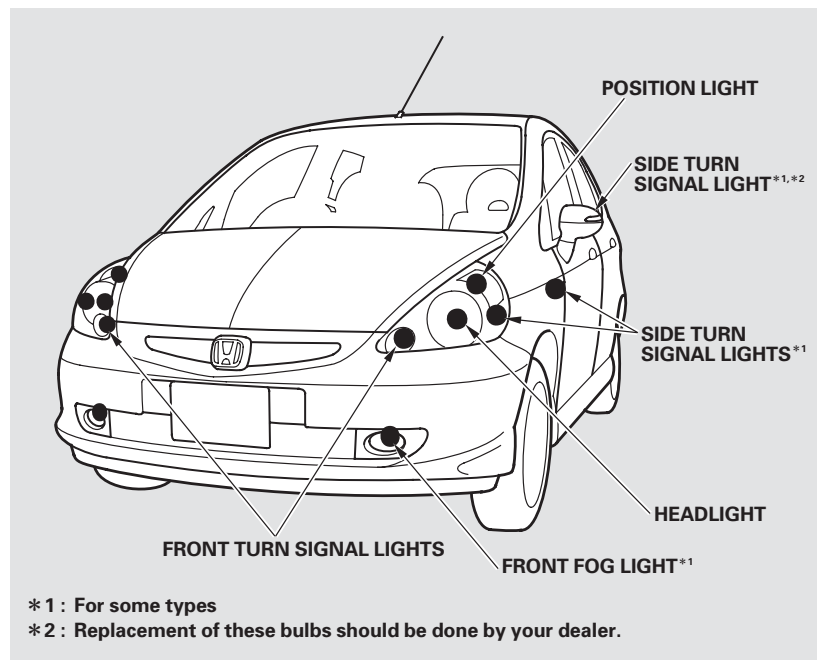
\*: If your vehicle uses 175/65R14 82T tyres, don't install tyres more than 15 inches in diameter. It may cause damage to the tyres and body of the vehicle.





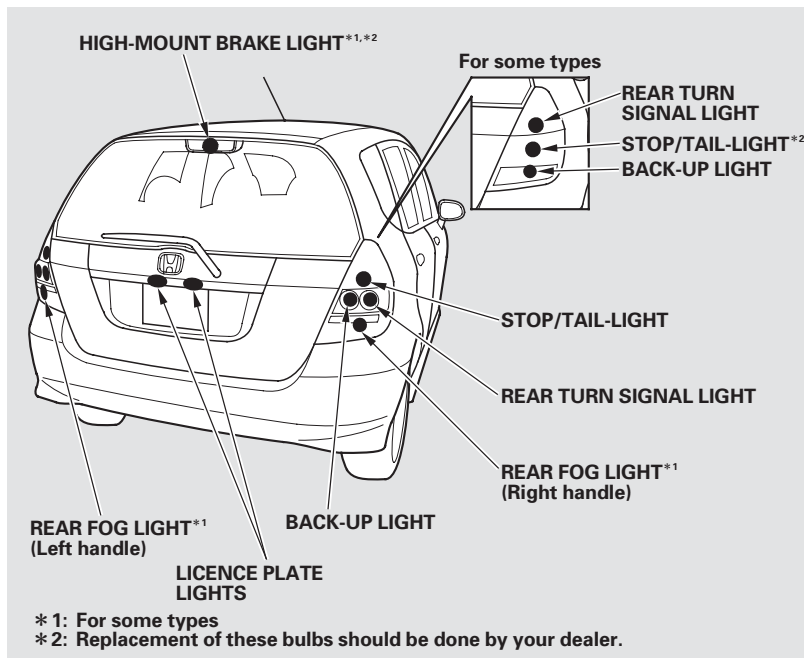
## Lights

Check the operation of your vehicle's exterior lights at least once a month. A burned out bulb can create an unsafe condition by reducing your vehicle's visibility and the ability to signal your intentions to other drivers.





## Lights



Check the following:

- Headlights (low and high beam)
- Position lights
- Tail-lights
- Brake lights
- Turn signals
- Side turn signals
- Back-up lights
- Hazard light function
- Licence plate lights
- High-mount brake light
- Rear fog light (for some types)
- Front fog lights (for some types)

If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Refer to the chart on page 393 to determine what type of replacement bulb is needed.







## Lights

---

### Headlight Aiming (For some types)

*Except for vehicles with headlight adjuster*

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustment of the headlights should be performed by your dealer or other qualified technician.

*On vehicles with headlight adjuster*  
The vertical angle of the headlights can be adjusted. For complete information, see page 109 .

### Headlights with High Voltage Discharge Tubes (For some types)

The low beam headlight bulbs are a type of high voltage discharge tube. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

### Replacing a Headlight Bulb

Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs, one on each side. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its steel base and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

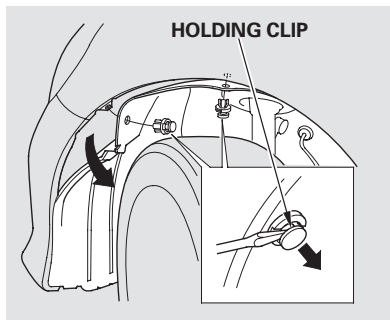
#### NOTICE

Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

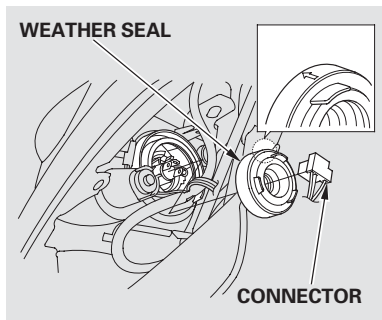




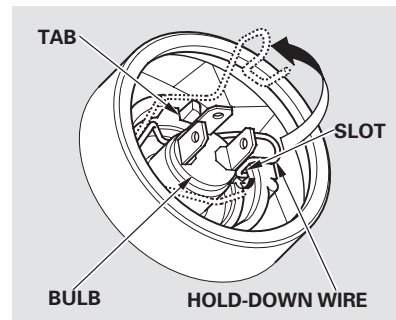
## Lights



1. If you are changing the bulb on the left side, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and turn off the engine. If you are changing the bulb on the right side, turn the steering wheel to the left.
2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the two holding clips from the inner fender.
3. Pull the inner fender cover back.



4. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pulling the connector straight back.
5. Remove the rubber weather seal by pulling it.
6. Unclip the end of the hold-down wire from its slot. Pivot the wire up out of the way and remove the bulb.



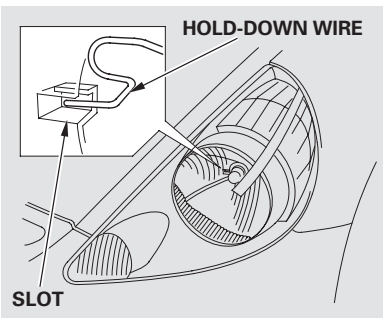
7. Insert the new bulb into the hole, making sure the tabs are in their slots. Pivot the hold-down wire back in place, and clip the end into the slot.
8. Install the rubber seal over the back of the headlight assembly. Make sure it is right side up; it is marked "→."

*CONTINUED*





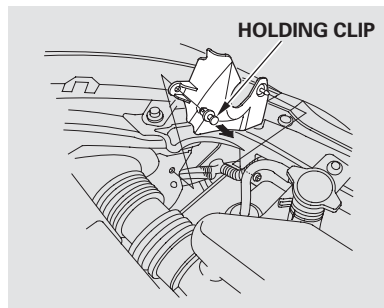
## Lights



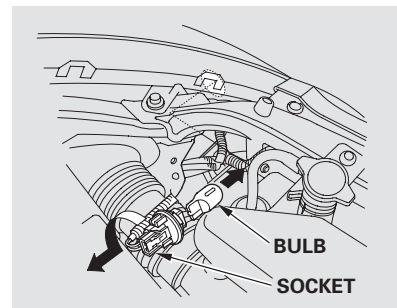
9. Push the electrical connector onto the tabs of the new bulb. Make sure the hold-down wire locks in place. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

10. Put the inner fender in place. Install the two holding clips. Lock each clip in place by pushing on the centre.

### Replacing a Front Turn Signal Light Bulb (Left side)



1. Open the bonnet. The front turn signal light is next to the headlight bulb. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the cover and pull out the cover.



2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.

## 332 Maintenance

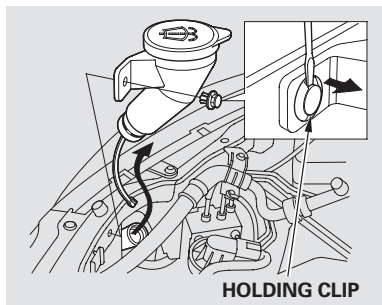




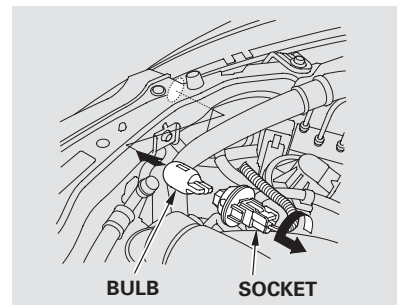
## Lights

3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.  
Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights and check that the new bulb is working.
6. Install the cover and holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the centre.

(Right side)



1. Open the bonnet.  
The front turn signal light is next to the headlight bulb. When replacing the right bulb, first remove the windscreen washer reservoir. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the reservoir.



2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.  
Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

*CONTINUED*

**Maintenance 333**

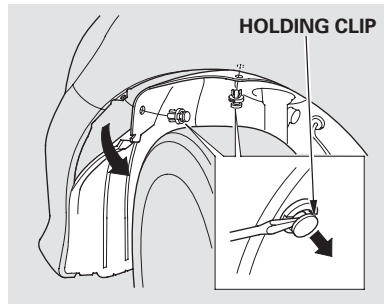




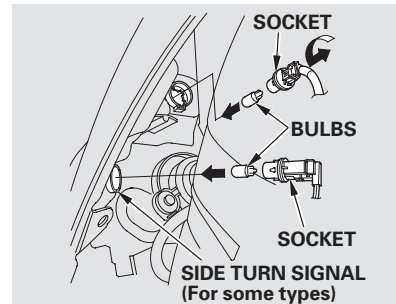
## Lights

4. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Turn on the lights and check that the new bulb is working.
6. Put the windscreen washer reservoir back in place. Install the holding clip. Lock it in place by pushing on the centre.

### Replacing a Front Position Light/ Side Turn Signal Bulb



1. If you are changing the bulb on the left side, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and turn off the engine. If you are changing the bulb on the right side, turn the steering wheel to the left.
2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the two holding clips from the inner fender.



3. Pull the inner fender cover back.
4. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.
5. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

### 334 Maintenance

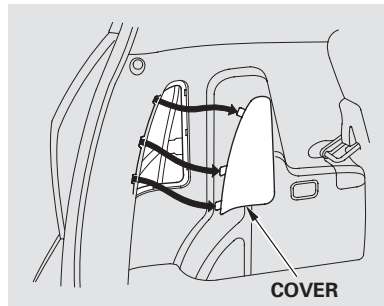




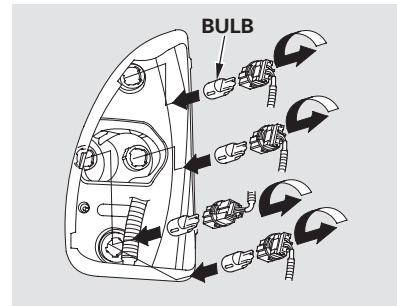
## Lights

6. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
8. Put the inner fender in place. Install the two holding clips. Lock each clip in place by pushing on the centre.

### Replacing Rear Bulbs



1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover. Remove it by carefully prying in the notch on its middle edge with a small flat-tipped screwdriver.



2. Determine which of the four bulbs is burned out: stop/tail-light (on some types), back-up light, turn signal light or rear fog light (on some types).
3. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.

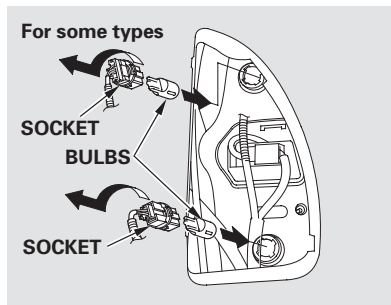
*CONTINUED*

**Maintenance 335**



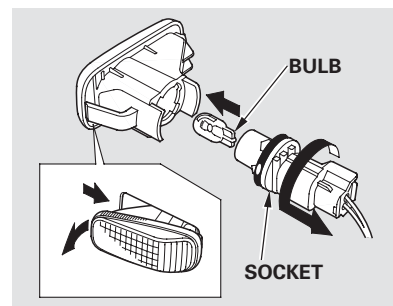


## Lights



4. Remove the burned out bulb by pulling it straight out of its socket.
5. Install the new bulb in the socket.
6. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
7. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly.
8. Reinstall the tail-light assembly cover.

### Replacing a Side Turn Signal Bulb (For some types)



1. Push the front of the turn signal assembly toward the rear of the vehicle and pull the assembly out.
2. Turn the socket one-quarter turn anticlockwise to remove it from the lens.

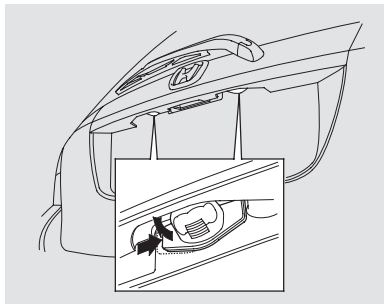




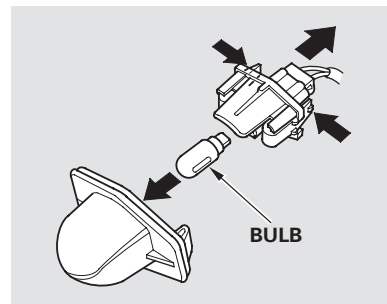
## Lights

3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.  
Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Put the socket back into its hole in the lens and turn it clockwise until it locks.
5. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. Put the side turn signal assembly back into the body, rear first. Push on the front edge until it snaps into place.

### Replacing a Rear Licence Plate Bulb



1. Open the tailgate. Push the rear licence light assembly toward the right and pull it out of the tailgate.
2. Remove the licence light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb in until it bottoms in the socket.



4. Turn on the lights and check that the new bulb is working.
5. Put the licence light assembly back into the tailgate, the right edge first. Push the assembly to the left until it stops.







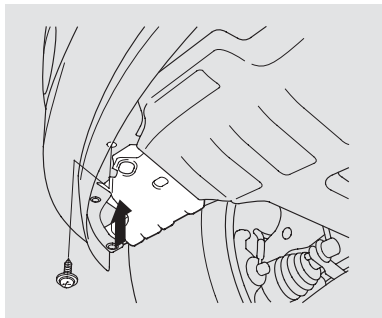
## Lights

### Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb (For some types)

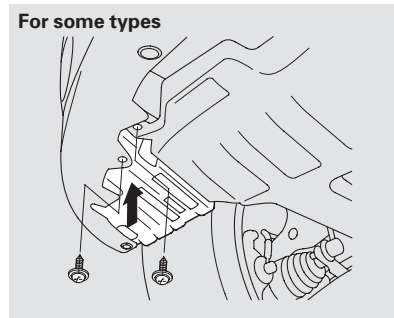
Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

#### NOTICE

Halogen light bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.



1. Remove the screw from the under cover.

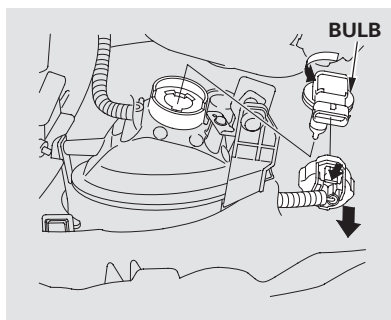


- 1: For some types  
Remove the screws from the under covers.
2. Push the under cover inward.





## Lights

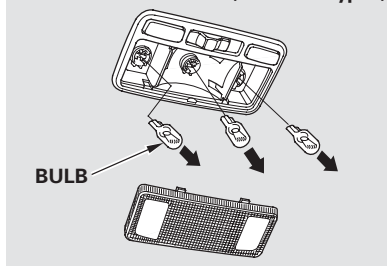


3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by squeezing the connector to unlock the tab, then slide the connector off the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb by turning it approximately one-quarter turn anticlockwise.

5. Insert the new bulb into the hole and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
7. Turn on the front fog lights to test the new bulb.
8. Put the under cover back in place and reinstall the one or two (for some types) screws.

### Replacing Bulbs in the Interior Lights

#### FRONT CEILING LIGHT (For some types)



The courtesy lights in the doors and roof come apart the same way. They do not use the same type of bulb.

1. Remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a fingernail file or a small flat-tipped screwdriver. Do not pry on the edge of the housing around the lens.

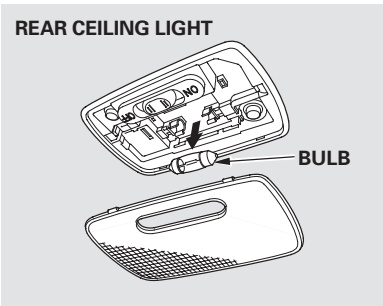
*CONTINUED*





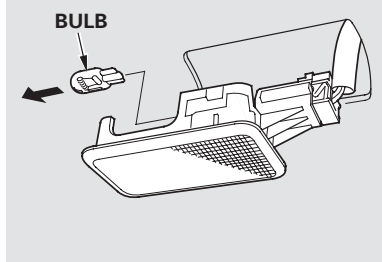
## Lights

### REAR CEILING LIGHT

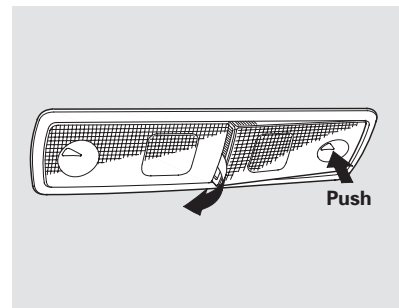


2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of its metal tabs.
3. Push the new bulb into the metal tabs. Snap the lens back in place.

### LUGGAGE AREA LIGHT



### Replacing the Individual Map Light Bulbs (For some types)

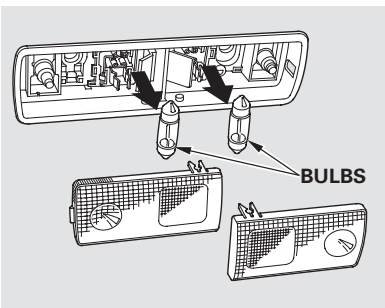


1. Check which bulb is burned out. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Remove the lens of the burned out bulb by carefully prying on the edge between the lenses with a fingernail file or a small flat-tipped screwdriver.



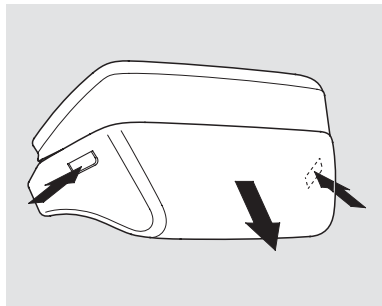


## Lights

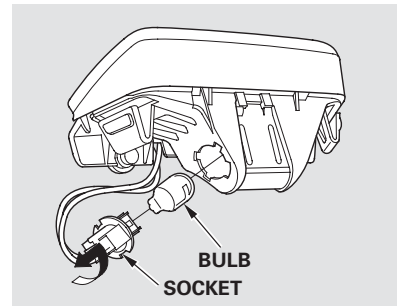


3. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out of the bulb holder.
4. Push the new bulb into the bulb holder.
5. Reinstall the lens in place.

### Replacing a High-mount Brake Light Bulb



1. Open the tailgate.  
Remove the light assembly cover by pushing the tabs on both sides and pulling the cover down.
2. Remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn anticlockwise.



3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.  
Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

*CONTINUED*

**Maintenance 341**





## Lights, Storing Your Vehicle

---

- Put the socket back into the light assembly and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
- Put the cover back onto the light assembly. Push it up until it locks in place.

### Storing Your Vehicle

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than one month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc. are completely dry.

- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).
- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tyres are off the ground.
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front and rear wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windscreen.





## Storing Your Vehicle

- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and tailgate seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and tailgate seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Nonporous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, run the engine for a while periodically (preferably once a month).

If you store your vehicle for 1 year or longer, have your dealer perform the inspections called for in the 2 years/40,000 km (25,000 miles) maintenance schedule\* as soon as you take it out of storage (see page 278). The replacements called for in the maintenance schedule are not needed unless the vehicle has actually reached that time or distance.

\* : In EU countries, follow the Maintenance Schedule in the separate service information booklet that came with your vehicle.





07/09/12 09:55:41 32SAA650\_347





## Appearance Care

Regular cleaning and polishing of your vehicle helps to keep it “new” looking. This section gives you hints on how to clean your vehicle and preserve its appearance: the paint, brightwork, wheels and interior. Also included are several things you can do to help prevent corrosion.

Exterior Care.....	346
Washing .....	346
Roof Antenna .....	347
Waxing .....	347
Aluminium Wheels.....	348
Paint Touch-up .....	348
Interior Care.....	349
Carpeting .....	349
Floor Mats .....	349
Fabric .....	350
Vinyl .....	350
Leather.....	350
Seat Belts.....	350
Windows .....	351
Air Fresheners .....	351
Corrosion Protection.....	352







## Exterior Care

---

### Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve your vehicle's beauty. Dirt and grit can scratch the paint, while tree sap and bird droppings can permanently ruin the finish.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is parked in the sun, move it into the shade and let the exterior cool down before you start.

Only use the solvents and cleaners recommended in this owner's manual.

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle.

### NOTICE

When washing the vehicle with a high pressure washing system, the fuel fill door may flip open and the vehicle may be damaged. Confirm that the fuel fill door is locked before carrying out high pressure washing.

- Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove loose dirt.
- Fill a bucket with cool water. Mix in a product made especially for car washing.
- Wash the vehicle using the water and detergent solution and a soft-bristle brush, sponge, or soft cloth. Start at the top and work your way down. Rinse frequently.

- Check the body for road tar, tree sap, etc. Remove these stains with tar remover or turpentine. Rinse it off immediately so it does not harm the finish. Remember to re-wax these areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.

- When you have washed and rinsed the whole exterior, dry it with a chamois or soft towel. Letting it air-dry will cause dulling and water spots.

As you dry the vehicle, inspect it for chips and scratches that could allow corrosion to start. Repair them with touch-up paint (see page 348).

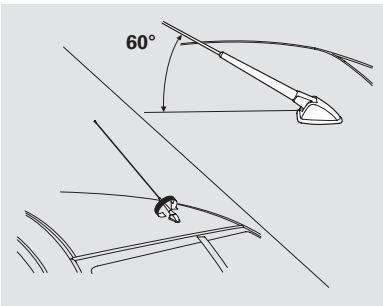
## 346 Appearance Care





## Exterior Care

### Antenna Roof Antenna



Your vehicle is equipped with an antenna on the centre front of the roof. Before using a “drive-through” car washer, make sure you remove the antenna by unscrewing it by hand. This prevents the antenna from being damaged by the car washer brushes.

### Waxing

Always wash and dry the whole vehicle before waxing it. You should wax your vehicle, including the metal trim, whenever water sits on the surface in large patches. It should form into beads or droplets after waxing.

You should use a quality liquid or paste wax. Apply it according to the instructions on the container. In general, there are two types of products:

**Waxes** — A wax coats the finish and protects it from damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, etc. You should use a wax on your vehicle when it is new.

**Polishes** — Polishes and cleaner/waxes can restore the shine to paint that has oxidized and lost some of its shine. They normally contain mild abrasives and solvents that remove the top layer of the finish. You should use a polish on your vehicle if the finish does not have its original shine after using a wax.

Cleaning tar, insects, etc. with removers also takes off the wax. Remember to re-wax those areas, even if the rest of the vehicle does not need waxing.





## Exterior Care

---

### **Aluminium Wheels (For some types)**

Clean your vehicle's aluminium alloy wheels as you do the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

The wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminium from corroding and tarnishing. Using harsh chemicals, including some commercial wheel cleaners or stiff brushes, can damage this clear-coat. Only use a mild detergent and soft brush or sponge to clean the wheels.

### **Paint Touch-up**

Your dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's colour. The colour code is printed on a sticker on the driver's doorjamb or a plate attached to the frame behind the radiator. Take this code to your dealer so you are sure to get the correct colour.

Inspect your vehicle frequently for chips or scratches in the paint. Repair them right away to prevent corrosion of the metal underneath. Use the touch-up paint only on small chips and scratches. More extensive paint damage should be repaired by a professional.

Chemical solvents or strong cleaners may cause discolouration or stain the seat or other interior parts. Be careful when you use such a chemical agent when cleaning the interior components.





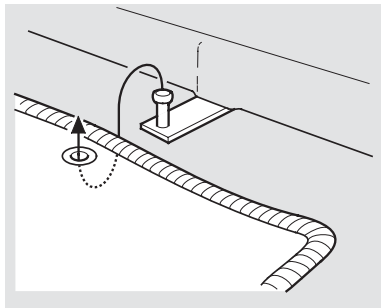
## Interior Care

### **Carpeting**

Vacuum the carpeting frequently to remove dirt. Ground-in dirt will make the carpet wear out faster.

Periodically shampoo the carpet to keep it looking new. Use one of the foam-type carpet cleaners on the market. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner, applying it with a sponge or soft brush. Keep the carpeting as dry as possible by not adding water to the foam.

### **Floor Mats**



#### *For some types*

The genuine Honda driver's floor mat was designed to hook over the floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals.

If you remove the floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you replace it, use a genuine Honda floor mat that is designed to be used with the floor mat anchor in your vehicle.

If you use a non-Honda floor mat in the driver's footwell, make sure it fits properly and that it can be used with the floor mat anchor.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat, otherwise the additional mats may slide forward and interfere with the pedals.





## Interior Care

---

### Fabric

Vacuum dirt and dust out of the material frequently. For general cleaning, use a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water, letting it air dry. To clean off stubborn spots, use a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Test it on a hidden area of the fabric first, to make sure it does not bleach or stain the fabric. Follow the instructions that come with the cleaner.

### Vinyl

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Wipe the vinyl with a soft cloth dampened in a solution of mild soap and water. Use the same solution with a soft-bristle brush on more difficult spots. You can also use commercially-available spray or foam-type vinyl cleaners.

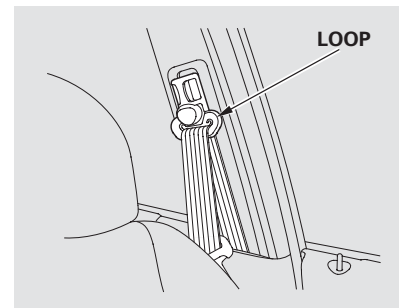
### Leather

#### (For some types)

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay particular attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water, then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. If further cleaning is needed, use a soap specifically for leather, such as saddle soap. Apply this soap with a damp, soft cloth. Wipe down and buff as described above.

If you use a leather cleaner, wipe it off quickly with a soft and dry cloth. Never leave a cloth soaked with leather cleaner on any part of the interior. If left for a long time, some leather cleaners may cause discoloration or cracking of interior trim or fabric.

### Seat Belts



If your seat belts get dirty, you can use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. They can weaken the belt material. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

## 350 Appearance Care





## Interior Care

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

### Windows

Clean the windows, inside and out, with a commercially-available glass cleaner. You can also use a mixture of one part white vinegar to 10 parts water. This will remove the haze that builds up on the inside of the windows. Use a soft cloth or paper towels to clean all glass and clear plastic surfaces.

### NOTICE

The rear window demister is bonded to the inside of the glass. Wiping vigorously up-and-down can dislodge and break these wires. When cleaning the rear window, use gentle pressure and wipe side-to-side.

### Air Fresheners

If you want to use an air freshener/deodorizer in the interior of your vehicle, it is best to use a solid type. Some liquid air fresheners contain chemicals that may cause parts of the interior trim and fabric to crack or discolour.

If you use a liquid air freshener, make sure you fasten it securely so it does not spill as you drive.





## Corrosion Protection

---

Two factors normally contribute to causing corrosion in your vehicle:

1. Moisture trapped in body cavities. Dirt and road salt that collects in hollows on the underside of the vehicle stays damp, promoting corrosion in that area.
2. Removal of paint and protective coatings from the exterior and underside of the vehicle.

Many corrosion-preventive measures are built into your vehicle. You can help keep your vehicle from corroding by performing some simple periodic maintenance:

- Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you discover them.
- Inspect and clean out the drain holes in the bottom of the doors and body.
- Check the floor coverings for dampness. Carpeting and floor mats may remain damp for a long time, especially in winter. This dampness can eventually cause the floor panels to corrode.
- Use a high-pressure spray to clean the underside of your vehicle. This is especially important in areas that use road salt in winter. It is also a good idea in humid climates and areas subject to salt air. Vehicles equipped with ABS have a sensor and wiring at each wheel. Be careful not to damage them.
- Have the corrosion-preventive coatings on the underside of your vehicle inspected and repaired periodically.





## Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more-common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tyre.....	354
Changing a Flat Tyre .....	355
If Your Engine Won't Start.....	361
Nothing Happens or the Starter	
Motor Operates Very	
Slowly .....	361
The Starter Operates	
Normally .....	362
Jump Starting .....	363
If Your Engine Overheats.....	366
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	368
Charging System Indicator.....	369
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	370
Brake System Indicator .....	371
Opening the Fuel Fill Door.....	372
Closing the Sunroof.....	373
Fuses .....	374
Checking and Replacing	
Fuses.....	375
Emergency Towing .....	381







## Compact Spare Tyre (For some types)

Your vehicle has a compact spare tyre that takes up less space. Use this spare tyre as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the inflation pressure of the compact spare tyre every time you check the other tyres. It should be inflated to:

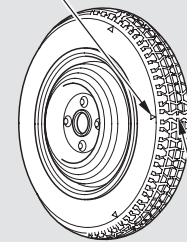
420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 60 psi)

Follow these precautions whenever you are using the compact spare tyre:

- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) under any circumstances.
- This tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces than the regular tyre. Use greater caution while driving on this tyre.

- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare.
- Do not use the compact spare tyre if you are towing a trailer. Towing a trailer is applicable on some models.
- The wheel of the compact spare tyre is designed especially to fit your vehicle. Do not use your spare tyre on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.
- The spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre, reducing your vehicle's ground clearance. Such things as road debris and parking speed bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.
- Turn the VSA system (If equipped) off (see page 265). Driving with the compact spare tyre may activate the VSA system.

INDICATOR LOCATION MARK



TREAD WEAR INDICATOR BAR

The compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tyre, mounted on the same wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the compact wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tyre.

### 354 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Changing a Flat Tyre

If you have a flat tyre while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area to stop that is far away from the traffic lanes.

### **⚠ WARNING**

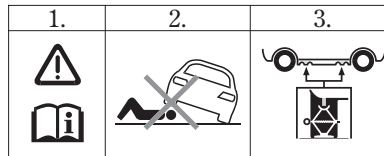
**The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.**

**Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.**

### **NOTICE**

Use the jack that came with your vehicle. If you try to raise another vehicle with this jack or use another jack to raise your vehicle, the vehicle or jack can be damaged.

Jack Label for EU models



1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

See page 393 for your jack type.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level and non-slippery ground, away from traffic. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.

*For some types*

If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all the passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tyre.

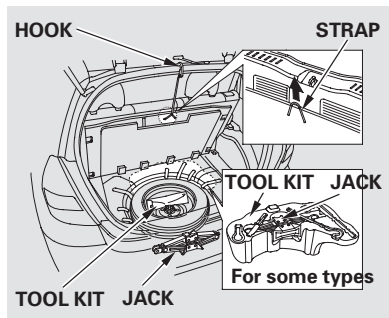
CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected **355**

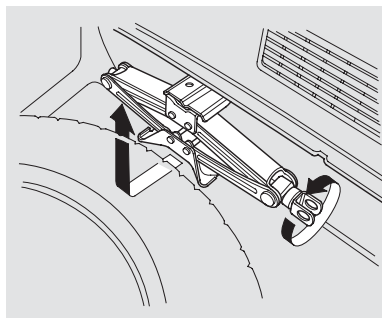




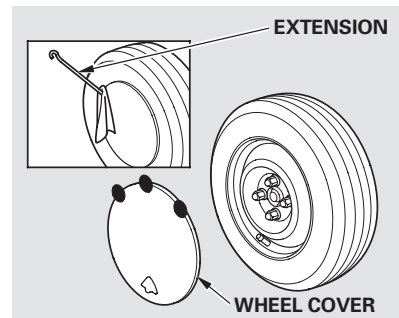
## Changing a Flat Tyre



3. Open the tailgate. Raise the luggage area floor by lifting up on the strap.  
To keep the luggage area floor out of the way, attach the hook to the tailgate sill.
4. Take the tool kit out of the spare tyre well.



5. Take the jack out of the luggage area.  
  
Turn the jack's end bracket anticlockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack by lifting it straight up.
6. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tyre out of its well.
7. Place blocks in front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the tyre you are changing.



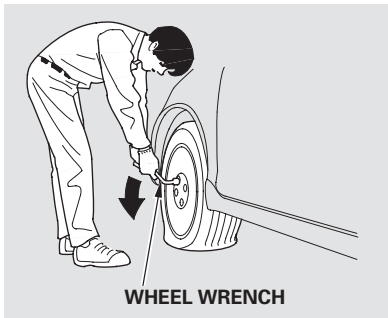
On some types, remove the wheel cover from the wheel with the extension.

### 356 Taking Care of the Unexpected

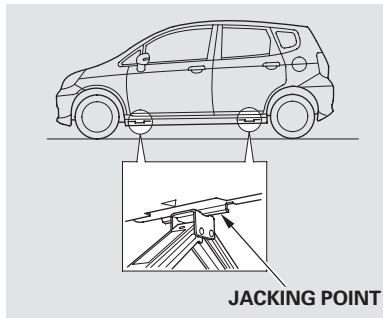




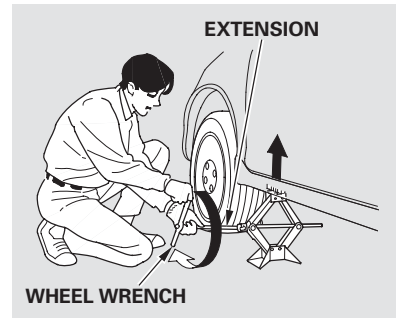
## Changing a Flat Tyre



8. Loosen the four wheel nuts 1/2 turn with the wheel wrench.



9. Locate the jacking point nearest the tyre you need to change. It is pointed to by an arrow moulded into the underside of the body. Place the jack under the jacking point. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



10. Use the extension and wheel wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tyre is off the ground.

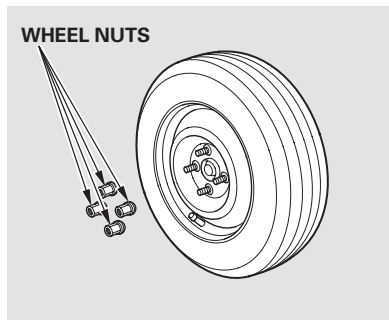
*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 357**

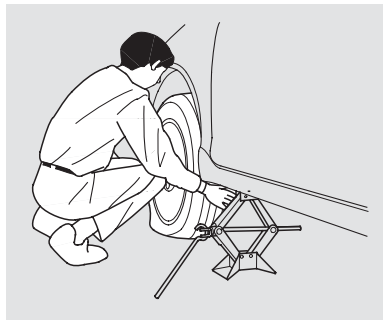




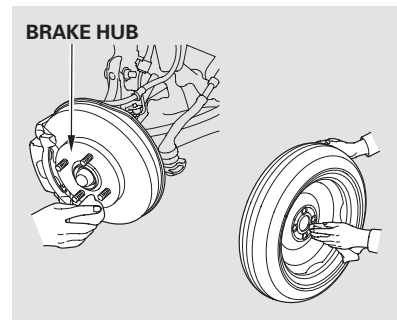
## Changing a Flat Tyre



11. Remove the wheel nuts.



12. Remove the flat tyre. Temporarily place the flat tyre on the ground with the outside surface of the wheel facing up. You could scratch the wheel if you put it face down.



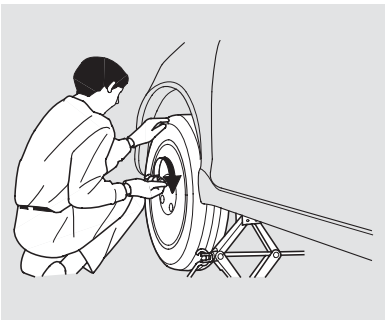
13. Before mounting the spare tyre, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully, it may be hot from driving.

**358** Taking Care of the Unexpected

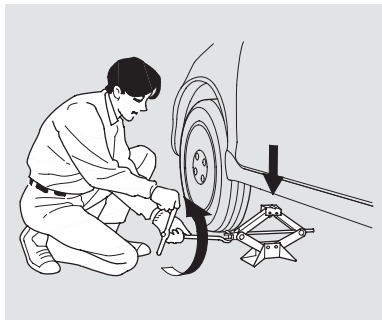




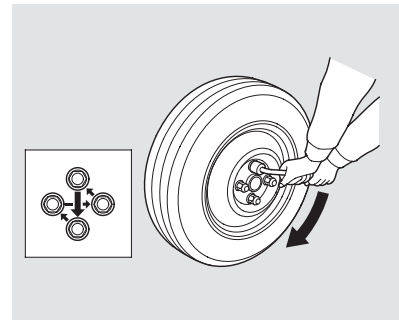
## Changing a Flat Tyre



14. Put on the spare tyre. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten them fully.



15. Lower the vehicle to the ground and remove the jack.



16. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.

Tighten the wheel nuts to:  
108 N·m (11 kgf·m , 80 lbf·ft)

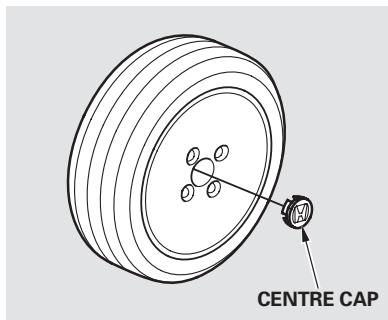
*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 359**

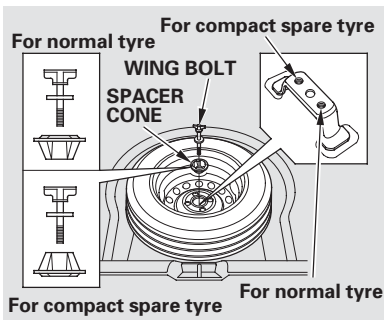




## Changing a Flat Tyre



17. On some types, remove the centre cap before storing the flat tyre in the spare tyre well.



18. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.

19. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt.

20. Secure the flat tyre by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

21. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket clockwise to lock it in place. Store the tools. Replace the cover.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.**

**Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.**

Store the wheel cover or centre cap in the luggage area. Make sure it does not get scratched or damaged.

22. Close the tailgate.

### **360** Taking Care of the Unexpected





## If Your Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why your engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the key to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

### Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound or series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Your vehicle has the Immobilizer System (on some types). You should use a properly-coded key to start the engine (see page 112 ). A key that is not properly coded will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission (CVT), check the position of the shift lever. It must be in Park or neutral.

On some manual transmission models, the clutch pedal must be pushed all the way to the floor or the starter will not operate.

- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or don't light at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 363 .
- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem (see **Emergency Towing** on page 381 ).

*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 361**







## If Your Engine Won't Start

---

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 309). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 363).

### The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 247.
- Do you have petrol? Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position for a minute and watch the fuel gauge. The low fuel level warning light may not be working, so you were not reminded to fill the tank.

- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 374).
- On vehicles with a fuel cutoff system, the fuel cutoff switch may be activated. If the switch is activated, it must be reset before starting the engine (see page 237).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 381.

### 362 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Jump Starting

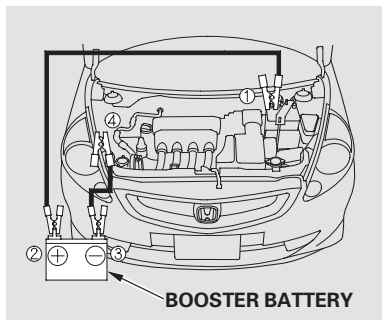
If your vehicle's battery has run down, you may be able to start the engine by using a booster battery. Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.**

**Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.**

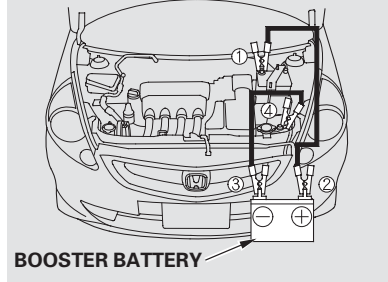
You cannot start your vehicle with an automatic transmission (CVT) by pushing or pulling it.



**BOOSTER BATTERY**

The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables. Make sure to disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

**For some types**



**BOOSTER BATTERY**

*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 363**





## Jump Starting

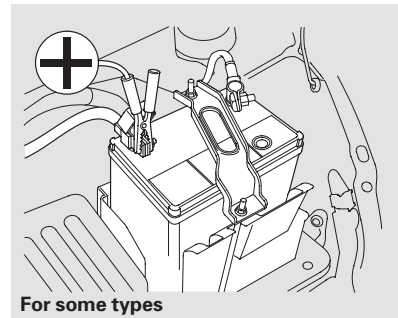
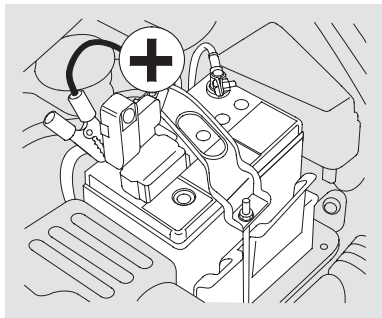
To jump start your vehicle, follow these directions closely:

1. Open the bonnet and check the physical condition of the battery (see page 309 ). In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or like ice, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

### NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, audio system, lights, etc.  
Put the transmission in neutral or Park, and set the parking brake.



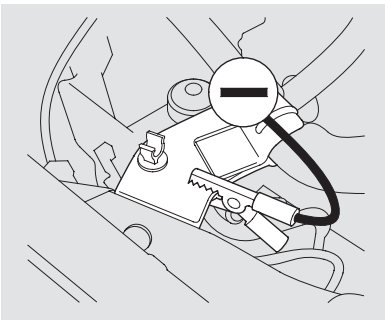
3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your vehicle's battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

### 364 Taking Care of the Unexpected

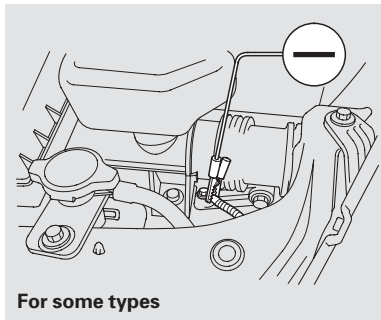




## Jump Starting



4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.



For some types

5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.
6. Start your vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check the jumper cable connections to make sure they have good metal-to-metal contact.
7. Once your vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until all are disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

Taking Care of the Unexpected 365





## If Your Engine Overheats

The high temperature indicator should not come on under most conditions. It may begin to blink if you are driving up a long steep hill on a very hot day. If it comes on, you should determine the reason.

### NOTICE

Driving when the high temperature indicator keeps coming on can cause serious damage to your engine.

Your vehicle can overheat for several reasons, such as lack of coolant or a mechanical problem. If the high temperature indicator turns on with the engine running or you see steam or spray coming from under the bonnet, you should take immediate action.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.**

**Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.**

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral or Park, and set the parking brake. Turn off the heating and cooling/ climate control system and all other accessories. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the bonnet, turn off the engine.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the high temperature indicator. If the high heat is due to overloading (climbing a long, steep hill on a hot day with the A/C running, for example), the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the high temperature indicator turns off, then continue driving.
4. If the high temperature indicator still turns on, turn off the engine.
5. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the bonnet.

### 366 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## If Your Engine Overheats

6. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 381).
7. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank (see page 236). If the level is below the MIN mark, add coolant to halfway between the MIN and MAX marks.
8. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may also have to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the high temperature indicator turns off before checking the radiator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.**

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

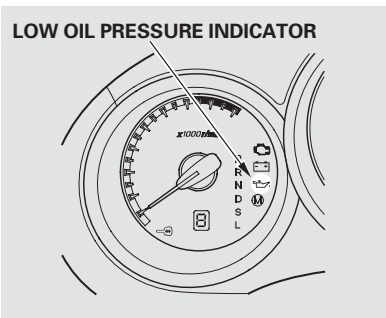
9. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. This releases any remaining pressure in the cooling system. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap and turn it until it comes off.
10. Start the engine and set the temperature control dial to maximum. Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
11. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine and watch the high temperature indicator. If it turns on again, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 381).
12. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 367**





## Low Oil Pressure Indicator



This indicator should light when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. It should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing, it indicates that the oil pressure dropped very low for a moment, then recovered. If the indicator stays on with the engine running, it shows that the engine has lost oil pressure and serious engine damage is possible. In either case, you should take immediate action.

### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

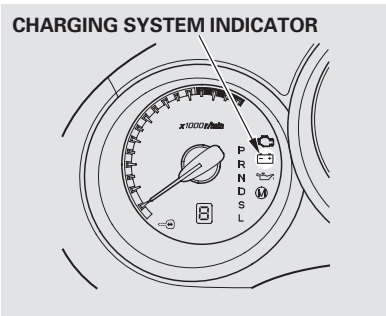
1. Safely pull off the road and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the bonnet and check the oil level (see page 234 ). Although oil level and oil pressure are not directly connected, an engine that is very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving manoeuvres.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 286 ).
4. Start the engine and watch the low oil pressure indicator. If the light does not go out within ten seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 381 ).

### 368 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Charging System Indicator



This indicator should come on when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, and go out after the engine starts. If it comes on brightly when the engine is running, it indicates that the charging system has stopped charging the battery.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories: radio, heater, A/C, rear demister, etc. Try not to use other electrically-operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running and take extra care not to stall it. Starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

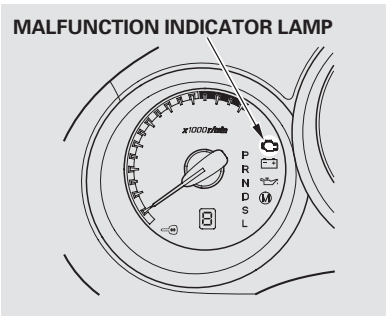
By eliminating as much of the electrical load as possible, you can drive several kilometers (miles) before the battery is too discharged to keep the engine running. Drive to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.







## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause your vehicle to put out excessive emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If this indicator comes on, safely pull off the road and turn off the engine. Restart the engine and watch the indicator. If it stays on, have your vehicle checked by the dealer as soon as possible. Drive moderately until the dealer has inspected the problem. Avoid full-throttle acceleration and driving at high speed.

You should also have the dealer inspect your vehicle if the indicator comes on frequently, even though it goes off when you follow the above procedure.

### NOTICE

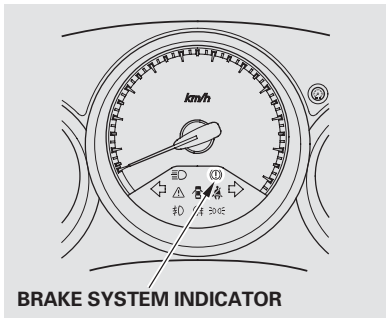
If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

### 370 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Brake System Indicator



The Brake System Indicator is a reminder to check the parking brake. On some types, it normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. This indicator comes on and stays lit if you do not fully release the parking brake.

If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a problem with the vehicle's brake system. In most cases, the problem is a low fluid level in the

brake fluid reservoir. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 299 ). If the fluid level is low, take the vehicle to your dealer and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. Because of the brake system's dual-circuit design, a problem in one part of the system will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much further before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal. The distance needed to stop will be much longer.

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the longer distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed, and repaired as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 381 ).

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and cautiously.

### *On vehicles with ABS*

If the ABS indicator comes on with this indicator, have the vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

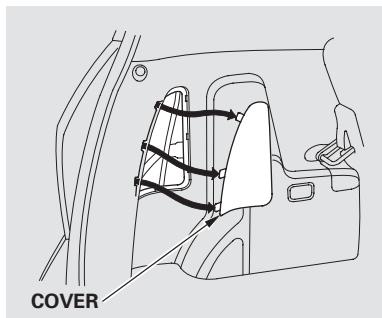
Taking Care of the Unexpected **371**



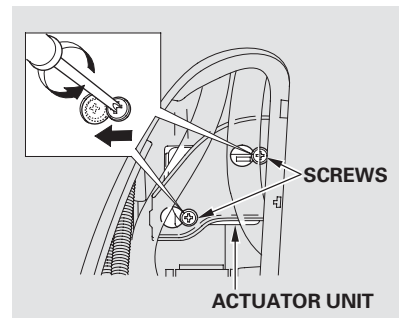


## Opening the Fuel Fill Door

When you are unable to unlock the fuel fill door, as an emergency operation, move the actuator aside from the luggage area and unlock the fuel fill door.



1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the cover. Remove it by carefully prying in the notch on its middle edge with a small flat-tipped screwdriver.



2. Loosen the two screws and move the actuator unit to the rear.

As you move the actuator back to the original position, the door will be locked.

### 372 Taking Care of the Unexpected

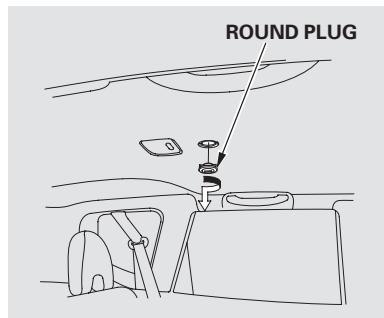




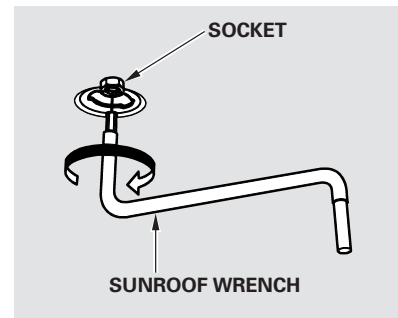
## Closing the Sunroof (For some types)

If the electric motor will not close the sunroof, do the following:

1. Check the fuse for the sunroof motor (see page 375 ). If the fuse is blown, replace it with one of the same or lower rating.
2. Try closing the sunroof. If the new fuse blows immediately or the sunroof motor still does not operate, you can close the sunroof manually.
3. Get the sunroof wrench out of the tool kit in the luggage area.



4. Use a screwdriver or coin to remove the round plug in the centre of the headliner.



5. Insert the sunroof wrench into the socket behind this plug. Turn the wrench until the sunroof is fully closed.
6. Remove the wrench. Reinstall the round plug.

If you need to close the sunroof manually, it means the sunroof opening/closing function is developing a problem. Have your vehicle checked by your dealer.

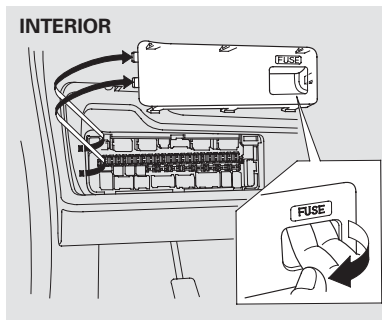
**Taking Care of the Unexpected 373**



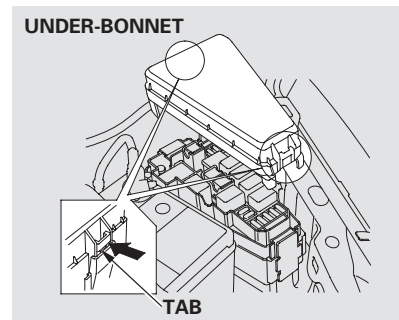


## Fuses

All the electrical circuits in your vehicle have fuses to protect them from a short circuit or overload. These fuses are located in two fuse boxes.



The interior fuse box is underneath the steering column. To remove the fuse box lid, pull it toward you and take the lid out of its hinges.



The under-bonnet fuse box is located in the back of the engine compartment on the driver's side. To open it, push the tabs as shown.



### 374 Taking Care of the Unexpected



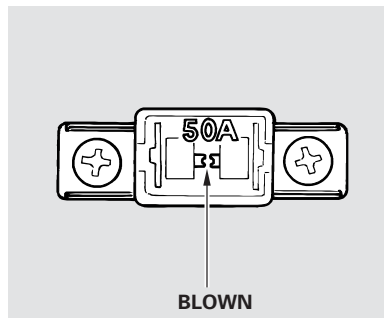


## Fuses

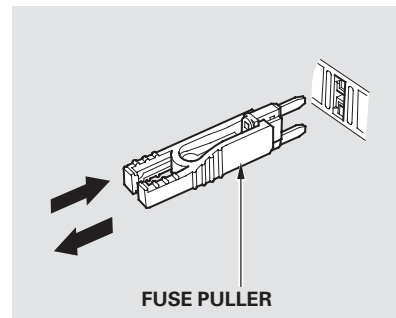
### Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on page 377 to 380, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that component. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is not the cause. Replace any blown fuses and check the component's operation.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.



3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.



4. (EU models)  
Check the smaller fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each fuse with the fuse puller provided in the interior fuse box.  
(Except EU models)  
Check the smaller fuses in the under-bonnet fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each fuse.

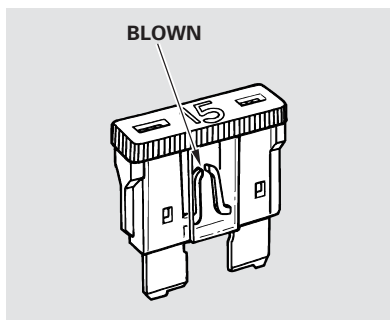
*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 375**





## Fuses



5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket, cigarette lighter, or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem in your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

### 376 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Fuses

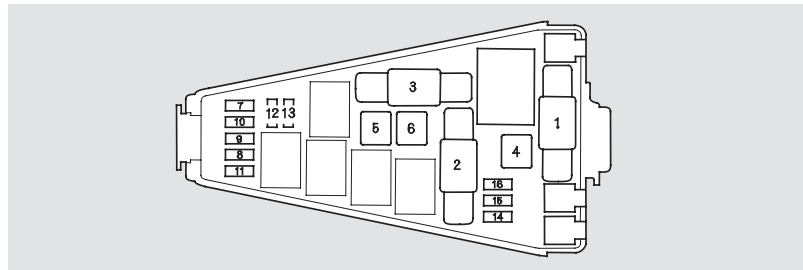
*On vehicles with driver's window auto feature*

If the driver's power window fuse is removed, the AUTO feature of the driver's window will be disabled. You should reset the AUTO feature (see page 135).

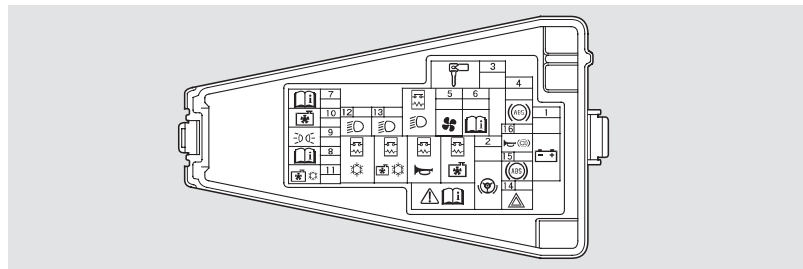
*For some types*

When the audio system is disabled, the clock setting in the audio system will be cancelled. You will need to reset the clock according to the instructions of the audio system.

### UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX



### FUSE BOX LABEL (For some types)



CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected **377**

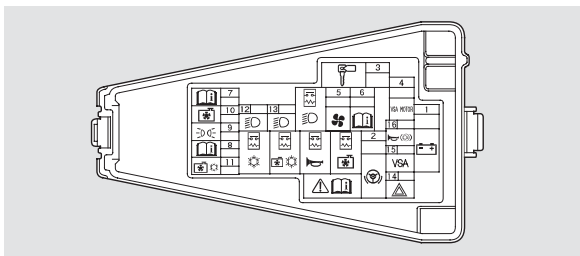






## Fuses

(For some types)



No.	Circuits Protected
5	Blower Relay
6	Main Fuse Battery
7	Fog Light* Sunroof*
8	Back up
9	Small Light
10	Cooling Fan
11	Condenser Fan
12	Right Headlight
13	Left Headlight
14	Hazard
15	ABS (F/S)* VSA (F/S)*
16	Horn, Stop

The fuses contained in the under-bonnet fuse box vary slightly depending on models. On some models, the locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table on this page for the fuses on your vehicle.

### UNDER-BONNET FUSE BOX

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Battery
2	Main Fuse EPS
3	Main Fuse Ignition
4	ABS Motor* VSA Motor*

\* : For some types

Circuits Protected
Battery*

\* : For some types (Fuses are located in the battery + terminal)

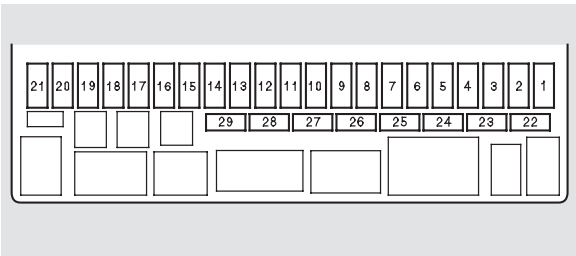
### 378 Taking Care of the Unexpected



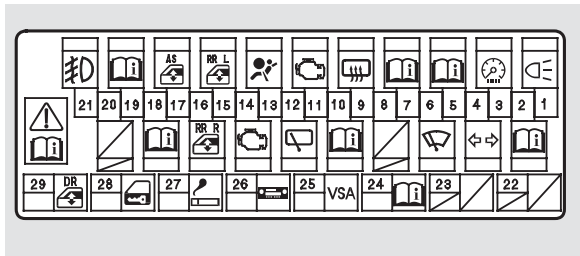


## Fuses

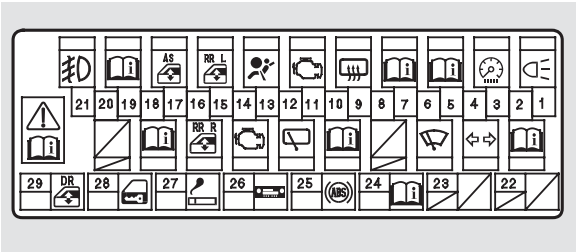
### INTERIOR FUSE BOX



### (For some types)



### FUSE BOX LABEL (For some types)



The fuses contained in the interior fuse box vary slightly depending on models. On some models, the locations of fuses are shown with symbols on the fuse label. Refer to the table in the next page for the fuses on your vehicle.

*CONTINUED*

**Taking Care of the Unexpected 379**





## Fuses

### INTERIOR FUSE BOX

No.	Circuits Protected
1	Back Lights
2	Ignition Coil 2
3	Meter
4	Turn Signal Lights
5	DBW*
6	Front Wiper
7	Not Used
8	Not Used
9	Rear Demister
10	Heater*, Air Conditioning*
11	Fuel Pump
12	Rear Wiper
13	SRS*
14	IGP
15	Rear Left Power Window*
16	Rear Right Power Window*

No.	Circuits Protected
17	Front Passenger's Power Window*
18	Rear Fog Light*
19	Sunroof*, Heated Mirrors*
20	Not Used
21	Front Fog Lights*
22	Not Used
23	Not Used
24	Ignition Coil 1
25	ABS*
	VSA*
26	Audio
27	Accessory Power Socket, Cigarette Lighter
28	Door Lock*
29	Driver's Power Window*

\* : For some types

### 380 Taking Care of the Unexpected





## Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or, if you belong to one, an organization that provides roadside assistance. Never tow your vehicle behind another vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

There are three popular types of professional towing equipment.

**Flat-bed Equipment** – The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

**Wheel-lift Equipment** – The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the tyres (front or rear) and lift them off the ground. The other two tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

**Sling-type Equipment** – The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the vehicle off the ground. Your vehicle's suspension and body can be seriously damaged. **This method of towing is unacceptable.**

If your vehicle cannot be transported by flat-bed, it should be towed by wheel-lift equipment with the front wheels off the ground. If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do the following.

*Manual Transmission*

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to neutral.

*Automatic transmission (CVT)*

- Start the engine.
- Press on the brake pedal. Move the shift lever through all its positions.

- Shift to D position for 5 seconds, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.
- Release the parking brake.
- Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock.

**NOTICE**

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km (50 miles), and keep the speed below 55 km/h (35 mph).

CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected **381**





## Emergency Towing

---

*For some types*

If your vehicle is equipped with a front spoiler, remove it before towing so it is not damaged.

If you decide to tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, make sure you use a properly-designed and attached tow bar. Prepare the vehicle for towing as described above, and leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock. Make sure the radio and any electrical accessories are turned off so they do not run down the battery.

### NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### 382 Taking Care of the Unexpected



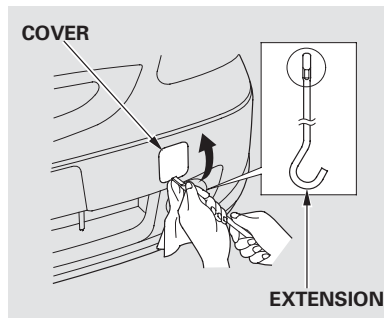


## Emergency Towing

### ***If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck***

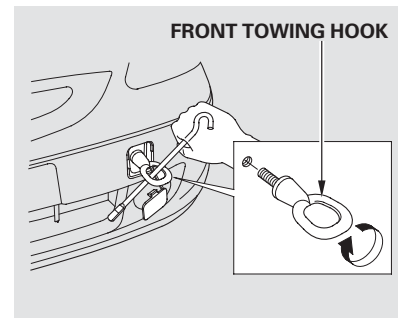
If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see page 381).

When towing your vehicle, you can use the detachable front towing hook equipped with your vehicle. Make sure to use properly-designed and attached towing equipment.



To attach the front towing hook on your vehicle:

1. Take the front towing hook and the extension out of the tool kit in the luggage area.
2. Put a cloth on the edge of the cover. Remove the cover from the front bumper by using the flat-tipped end of the extension.



3. Screw the front towing hook into the bolt hole behind the bumper through the opening and tighten the hook securely by the extension.

### **NOTICE**

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Taking Care of the Unexpected **383**







## Technical Information

---

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle, and the location of identification numbers. This section also includes the explanation of your vehicle's three way catalytic converter. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's emissions control systems.

Identification Numbers.....	386
Specifications .....	388
Emissions Controls.....	394
Three Way Catalytic Converter...	396





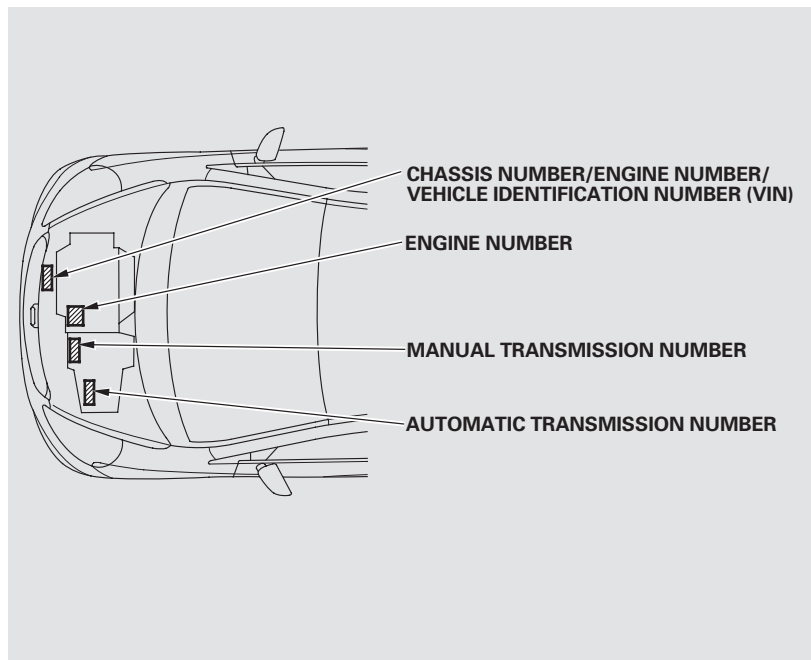


## Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers located in various places.

1. The Chassis Number is stamped on the radiator support bulkhead.
2. The Engine Number is stamped into the engine block.
3. The Manual Transmission Number is on a label on top of the transmission.
4. The Automatic Transmission Number is on a label on the front bottom of the transmission.

Do not mistake the transmission number for the engine number.



### 386 Technical Information



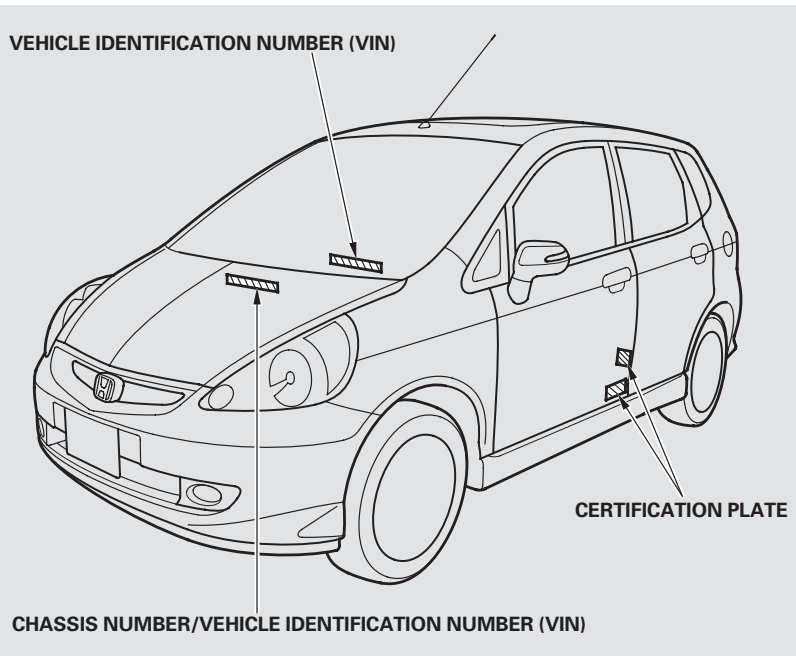


## Identification Numbers

On some types, the chassis number/ chassis and engine numbers also appear on the plate attached to the right damper housing.

On some other types, a certification plate is attached to the driver's doorjamb.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) appears on a plate attached to the engine compartment bulkhead or the right damper housing, and on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard on some types.



07/09/12 10:01:15 32SAA650\_391

## Specifications

Dimensions		
Length	Normal Bumper	3,845 mm (151.4 in)
	Sport Bumper	3,855 mm (151.8 in)
Width		1,675 mm (65.9 in)
Height		1,525 mm (60.0 in) <sup>*7</sup>
		1,600 mm (63.0 in) <sup>*1</sup>
Wheelbase		2,450 mm (96.5 in) <sup>*3, *7</sup>
Track	Front	1,460 mm (57.5 in) <sup>*2</sup>
		1,440 mm (56.7 in) <sup>*4</sup>
		1,445 mm (56.9 in) <sup>*3</sup>
	Rear	1,455 mm (57.3 in) <sup>*2, *5, *7</sup>
		1,440 mm (56.7 in) <sup>*6</sup>
		1,445 mm (56.9 in) <sup>*2, *7</sup>
		1,430 mm (56.3 in) <sup>*4</sup>
		1,455 mm (57.3 in) <sup>*3</sup>
		1,445 mm (56.9 in) <sup>*5</sup>
		1,430 mm (56.3 in) <sup>*6</sup>

The mounting point/rear overhang of coupling device

No.	Dimensions
(1)	484 mm (19.1 in) <sup>*1</sup>
(2)	450 mm (17.7 in) <sup>*1</sup>
(3)	410 mm (16.1 in) <sup>*1</sup>
(4)	223 mm (8.8 in) <sup>*1</sup>
(5)	994 mm (39.1 in)
(6)	993 mm (39.1 in)
(7)	984 mm (38.7 in)
(8)	740 mm (29.1 in) <sup>*1</sup>

\* 1 : The value is at unladen weight condition.

- \* 1 : With Roof Antenna
- \* 2 : For tyre type: 175/65 R14
- \* 3 : Except European model 175/65 R14 and Hong Kong model
- \* 4 : For tyre type: 185/55 R15
- \* 5 : Hong Kong 13L-X model
- \* 6 : Hong Kong 13E-X model
- \* 7 : Saudi Arabia model

NOTE:

- 1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.
- 2. ◆ mark shows towbar coupling point.

### 388 Technical Information

Downloaded from manualslibrary.com



## Specifications

### Weights

Curb weight Manual transmission	999 – 1,075 kg (2,202 – 2,370 lbs)*1, *2
	995 – 1,010 kg (2,194 – 2,227 lbs)*3
	1,010 – 1,040 kg (2,227 – 2,293 lbs)*4
	1,015 – 1,040 kg (2,238 – 2,293 lbs)*7
	981 – 1,040 kg (2,163 – 2,293 lbs) *8
Automatic transmission (CVT)	1,045 – 1,055 kg (2,304 – 2,326 lbs)*9
	1,030 – 1,093 kg (2,271 – 2,410 lbs)*5
	1,050 – 1,060 kg (2,315 – 2,337 lbs)*6
	1,022 – 1,035 kg (2,253 – 2,282 lbs)*3
	1,037 – 1,065 kg (2,286 – 2,348 lbs)*4
	1,045 – 1,065 kg (2,304 – 2,348 lbs)*7
	1,018 – 1,064 kg (2,244 – 2,346 lbs)*8
	1,075 – 1,080 kg (2,370 – 2,381 lbs)*9
Max. permissible weight (EU)	See the plate attached to the right damper housing in the engine compartment or ask dealer for information.
Max. permissible axle weight (EU)	
Max. permissible weight (Saudi Arabia)	1,510 kg (3,329 lbs)
Max. permissible axle weight (Saudi Arabia)	Front: 795 kg (1,753 lbs) Rear: 730 kg (1,609 lbs)

- \* 1 : 1.2 l model
- \* 2 : 1.4 l model
- \* 3 : 1.3 l model
- \* 4 : 1.5 l model
- \* 5 : European model
- \* 6 : Hong Kong model
- \* 7 : Saudi Arabia model
- \* 8 : Israel and Turkey model

- \* 9 : Mexico, Brazil, Argentina and  
Chile models

Max. towing weight (EU) *10, *11	Trailer with brakes	
	M/T	1,000 kg (2,205 lbs)
	CVT	800 kg (1,764 lbs)
	Trailer without brakes	
	M/T	450 kg (992 lbs)
	CVT	450 kg (992 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device		70 kg (154 lbs)

- \* 10 : The following is for Germany only.  
The maximum trailer weight is valid for 12% slope. For an  
increasing of the trailer weight you have to look in your vehicle  
paper or ask your next dealer.
- \* 11 : The maximum towing weight should be reduced if you tow a  
trailer over 1,000 meters of elevation. For more information, see  
page 270 .

CONTINUED

Technical Information **389**





## Specifications

Engine		
Type		Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC <sup>*1</sup> (SOHC VTEC <sup>*2</sup> ) in line, 4-cylinder gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	1.2 l engine	73 x 74.4 mm (2.87 x 2.93 in)
	1.3 l engine	73 x 80 mm (2.87 x 3.15 in)
	1.4 l engine	
	1.5 l engine	
	1.5 l VTEC engine	73 x 89.4 mm (2.87 x 3.57 in)
Displacement	1.2 l engine	1,245 cm <sup>3</sup> (75.9 cu-in) <sup>*3</sup>
	1.3 l engine	1,339 cm <sup>3</sup> (82.0 cu-in)
	1.4 l engine	
	1.5 l engine	
	1.5 l VTEC engine	1,497 cm <sup>3</sup> (91.0 cu-in)
Max. Power	1.2 l engine	57 kW (78 ps)/5,700 rpm <sup>*7</sup>
	1.3 l engine	60 kW (82 ps)/5,700 rpm <sup>*4, *5</sup>
	1.5 l VTEC engine	81 kW (110 ps)/5,800 rpm <sup>*4</sup>
Max. Torque	1.2 l engine	108 N·m (11 kgf·m)/2,800 rpm <sup>*7</sup>
	1.3 l engine	116 N·m (11.8 kgf·m)/2,800 rpm <sup>*4, *5</sup>
	1.5 l VTEC engine	143 N·m (14.6 kgf·m)/4,800 rpm <sup>*4</sup>

\* 1 : For engine type: L12A1, L12A3, L13A1, L13A2, L13A4, L13A5 L15A2, L15A4

\* 2 : For engine type: L15A1, L15A6

\* 3 : For engine type: L12A3

\* 4 : Saudi Arabia model

Compression ratio	10.1 : 1 <sup>*2, *4</sup>
	10.4 : 1 <sup>*4, *5, *6, *9</sup>
	10.5 : 1 <sup>*7</sup>
	10.8 : 1 <sup>*8</sup>
Spark plug	See spark plug maintenance section pages 303 to 306.

\* 5 : GCC models (Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, and U.A.E models)

\* 6 : Lebanon, Brunei, Singapore, South Africa and New Zealand models

\* 7 : Thailand model

\* 8 : Except Saudi Arabia, GCC, \* 6, \* 7 and \* 9 models

\* 9 : Brazil, Argentina, Chile and Mexico models



### 390 Technical Information





## Specifications

### Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 42 ℓ (11.1 US gal , 9.2 Imp gal)
Engine coolant	
Manual transmission	
Change* <sup>1</sup>	3.9 ℓ (1.03 US gal , 0.86 Imp gal) <sup>*2, *5</sup> 3.3 ℓ (0.87 US gal , 0.73 Imp gal) <sup>*6</sup> 3.8 ℓ (1.00 US gal , 0.84 Imp gal) <sup>*3</sup> 3.7 ℓ (0.98 US gal , 0.81 Imp gal) <sup>*4</sup>
Total	5.5 ℓ (1.45 US gal , 1.21 Imp gal) <sup>*2, *5</sup> 4.9 ℓ (1.29 US gal , 1.08 Imp gal) <sup>*6</sup> 5.4 ℓ (1.43 US gal , 1.19 Imp gal) <sup>*3</sup> 5.3 ℓ (1.40 US gal , 1.17 Imp gal) <sup>*4</sup>
Automatic transmission (CVT)	
Change* <sup>1</sup>	3.8 ℓ (1.00 US gal , 0.84 Imp gal) <sup>*2, *5</sup> 3.2 ℓ (0.85 US gal , 0.70 Imp gal) <sup>*6</sup> 3.7 ℓ (0.98 US gal , 0.81 Imp gal) <sup>*3</sup> 3.6 ℓ (0.95 US gal , 0.79 Imp gal) <sup>*4</sup>
Total	5.4 ℓ (1.43 US gal , 1.19 Imp gal) <sup>*2, *5</sup> 4.8 ℓ (1.27 US gal , 1.06 Imp gal) <sup>*6</sup> 5.3 ℓ (1.40 US gal , 1.17 Imp gal) <sup>*3</sup> 5.2 ℓ (1.37 US gal , 1.14 Imp gal) <sup>*4</sup>

\* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine.

Reserve tank capacity:  
0.4 ℓ (0.11 US gal , 0.09 Imp gal)

\* 2 : For engine type: L12A1, L12A3, L13A1, L13A2, L13A4, L13A5

\* 3 : For engine type: L15A1, L15A6

\* 4 : For engine type: GD1

\* 5 : With air conditioning system

\* 6 : Without air conditioning system



CONTINUED

Technical Information **391**





## Specifications

### Capacities

Engine oil	Change* <sup>1</sup> Including filter	3.6 ℓ (3.8 US qt , 3.2 Imp qt)
	Without filter	3.4 ℓ (3.6 US qt , 3.0 Imp qt)
	Total	4.2 ℓ (4.4 US qt , 3.7 Imp qt)
Manual transmission fluid	Change	1.5 ℓ (1.6 US qt , 1.3 Imp qt)
	Total	1.6 ℓ (1.7 US qt , 1.4 Imp qt)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	3.2 ℓ (3.4 US qt , 2.8 Imp qt)
	Total	5.4 ℓ (5.7 US qt , 4.8 Imp qt)
Windscreen washer reservoir		2.5 ℓ (2.6 US qt , 2.2 Imp qt)

\* 1 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine.

### Tyres

Size/Pressure	See tyre information label on driver's doorjamb or ask dealer for information.
---------------	--

### Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.0 mm (0.00 in)
	Rear	in 2.0 mm (0.08 in)
Camber	Front	0°
	Rear	- 1°
Caster	Front	2°10'

### Suspension

Type	Front	Mcperson Strut
	Rear	Torsion beam axle

### Steering

Type	Rack and pinion, with electrical power assistance
------	---

### Clutch

Type	Dry, single plate, diaphragm spring
------	-------------------------------------

### Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc or Drum
Parking	Mechanical

## 392 Technical Information





## Specifications

### Battery

Capacity	12 V – 28 AH/5 HR 12 V – 35 AH/20 HR
----------	---

### Fuses

Interior	See page 379 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door under the steering column.
Under-bonnet	See page 377 or the fuse box cover.

### Jack

Type	Honda Type-A* or Type-D*
------	--------------------------

\* : European models

### Lights

Headlights	12 V – 60/55 W (H4/HB2) 12 V – 35 W *1,*2
Front turn signal lights	12 V – 21 W
Front position lights	12 V – 5 W
Side turn signal lights (headlight assembly)*2	12 V – 5 W
Side turn signal lights (fender)*2	12 V – 5 W
Side turn signal lights (door mirror)*2	See note below
Rear turn signal lights	12 V – 21 W
Stop/tail-lights*2	12 V – 21/5 W
Stop/tail-lights (LED)*2	See note below
Back-up lights	12 V – 21 W
Front fog light*2	12 V – 55 W (H11)
Rear fog light*2	12 V – 21 W
Licence plate lights	12 V – 5 W
High-mount brake light*2	12 V – 21 W
High-mount brake light (LED)*2	See note below
Spotlights*2	12 V – 5 W
Ceiling lights	Front*2 12 V – 5 W Rear 12 V – 8 W
Individual map lights*2	12 V – 8 W
Luggage area light	12 V – 5 W

\* 1 : On vehicles with high voltage discharge type low beam headlights, replacement of a low beam headlight bulb should be performed by a dealer.

\* 2 : For some types

NOTE:

Replacement of these bulbs should be done by your dealer.

Technical Information **393**







## Emissions Controls

---

The burning of petrol in your vehicle's engine produces several byproducts. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx) and hydrocarbons (HC). Petrol evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

### **Crankcase Emissions Control System**

Your vehicle has a Positive Crankcase Ventilation System. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The Positive Crankcase Ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

### **Evaporative Emissions Control System**

As petrol evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal absorbs the vapour. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapour is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.





## Emissions Controls

### **Exhaust Emissions Controls**

The exhaust emissions controls include three or four systems: PGM-FI, Ignition Timing Control, Exhaust Gas Recirculation (on some models), and Three Way Catalytic Converter. These three or four systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NO<sub>x</sub> that comes out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

### ***PGM-FI System***

The PGM-FI System uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: Air Intake, Engine Control, and Fuel Control. The Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM-A/T only) uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

### ***Ignition Timing Control System***

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NO<sub>x</sub> produced.

### ***Three Way Catalytic Converter***

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NO<sub>x</sub> in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), dinitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>), and water vapour.

### ***Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System***

The Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NO<sub>x</sub> produced when the fuel is burned.

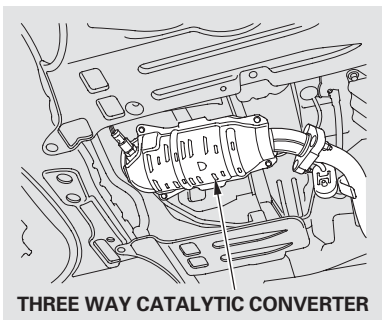




## Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NOx. A replacement unit must be an original Honda part or its equivalent.

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



**THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER**

A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded petrol can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.

- Keep the engine tuned-up.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, back-firing, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.





## Index

<b>A</b>	
Accessories and Modifications .....	239
Accessories.....	239
Additional Safety Precautions..	240
Modifications .....	240
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) .....	113
Accessory Power Socket .....	143
Additives, Engine Oil.....	287
Airbag (SRS) .....	12, 73
Air Cleaner Element.....	301
Air Conditioning System.....	148, 157
Maintenance.....	317
Usage .....	148, 160
Air Outlets (Vents).....	151, 157
Air Pressure, Tyres .....	321
Aluminium Wheels, Cleaning .....	348
Antenna.....	347
Antifreeze .....	290
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)	
Indicator Lights .....	93, 262
Operation .....	261
Anti-theft Steering Column	
Lock.....	113
Appearance Care .....	345

Aquaplaning.....	268
Ashtray.....	142
Audio System .....	167
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners ....	69
Automatic Transmission (CVT) ..	251
Capacity, Fluid .....	392
Checking Fluid Level.....	297
7-Speed Auto Shift Mode.....	255
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ....	256
Shifting.....	252
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..	251
Shift Lever Positions .....	252
Shift Lock Release.....	258
Auto Reverse.....	135
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	227
<b>B</b>	
Battery	
Charging System	
Indicator.....	92, 369
Jump Starting .....	363
Maintenance.....	309
Specifications .....	393
Before Driving .....	229
Belts, Seat.....	10, 66

Beverage Holder.....	141
Bonnet Latch.....	302
Bonnet, Opening the .....	233
Brakes	
Anti-lock System (ABS) .....	261
Break-in, New Linings .....	230
Bulb Replacement .....	335
Fluid .....	299
Parking.....	140
System Indicator .....	95, 371
Wear Indicators .....	260
Brakes, ABS	
Operation .....	261
System Indicator .....	93, 262
Braking System.....	260
Break-in, New Vehicle .....	230
Brightness Control,	
Instruments .....	103
Brights, Headlights .....	102

CONTINUED





# Index

Bulb Replacement		Ceiling Light.....	145	Roof Antenna .....	347
Back-up Lights .....	335	Certification Plate .....	387	Seat Belts .....	350
Brake Lights.....	335	Chains .....	326	Vinyl .....	350
Front Fog Lights.....	338	Changing a Flat Tyre .....	355	Windows .....	351
Front Position Lights and Side		Changing Engine Coolant.....	292	Climate Control System .....	157
Turn Signal.....	334	Changing Oil		Clock, Setting the ..	173, 190, 207, 218
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	332	How to.....	287	Clutch Fluid .....	300
Headlights .....	330	When to.....	278	Coat Hook.....	141
High-mount Brake Light .....	341	Charging System Indicator ...	92, 369	Cold Weather, Starting in.....	248
Interior Lights.....	339	Chassis Number .....	386	Compact Spare Tyre.....	354
Licence Plate Lights.....	337	Checklist, Before Driving.....	246	Continuously Variable	
Luggage Area Light .....	340	Childproof Door Locks .....	121	Transmission (CVT) .....	251
Rear Fog Light.....	335	Child Restraint Systems .....	31	Controls, Instruments and.....	83
Rear Lights.....	335	Lower Anchorages .....	62	Coolant	
Side Turn Signal Lights ....	334, 336	Tether Anchor Points .....	60	Adding.....	290
Specifications .....	393	Child Restraint Systems for EU....	37	Checking.....	236
Bulbs, Halogen.....	330, 338	Child Safety .....	24	Proper Solution .....	290
		Cigarette Lighter.....	142	Replacing .....	292
		Cleaner Element, Air.....	301	Temperature Indicators.....	95
		Cleaning		Corrosion Protection.....	352
		Air Fresheners.....	351	CVT Fluid .....	297
		Aluminium Wheels.....	348		
		Exterior .....	346	<b>D</b>	
		Floor Mats .....	349	DANGER, Explanation of.....	ii
		Interior .....	349	Dashboard .....	2, 84
		Leather.....	350		





## Index

Dead Battery, What to Do ..... 363  
 Defog and Defrost ..... 154, 165  
 Demister, Rear Window ..... 106  
 Detachable Anchor ..... 131  
 Dimensions ..... 388  
 Dimming the Headlights ..... 102  
 Dipstick  
   Automatic Transmission  
     (CVT) ..... 297  
   Engine Oil ..... 235  
 Directional Signals ..... 103  
 Disc Brake Wear Indicators ..... 260  
 Disposal of Used Oil ..... 289  
 Doors  
   Locking and Unlocking ..... 114  
   Open Indicator ..... 94  
   Power Door Locks ..... 115  
   Super Locking ..... 116  
 Downshifting, Manual  
   Transmission ..... 248  
 Drive Belts ..... 320  
 Driver and Passenger Safety ..... 7  
 Driving ..... 245  
   Economy ..... 238  
   In Bad Weather ..... 267  
 Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 318

### E

Economy, Fuel ..... 238  
 Electric Power Steering (EPS)  
   Indicator ..... 94  
 Emergencies on the Road ..... 353  
   Battery, Jump Starting ..... 363  
   Brake System Indicator ..... 371  
   Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 355  
   Charging System Indicator ..... 369  
   Checking the Fuses ..... 375  
   Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 368  
   Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 370  
   Manually Closing Sunroof ..... 373  
   Opening the Fuel Fill Door ..... 372  
   Overheated Engine ..... 366  
 Emergency Brake ..... 140  
 Emergency Flashers ..... 106  
 Emergency Towing ..... 381  
 Emissions Controls ..... 394  
 Engine  
   Coolant Temperature  
     Indicators ..... 95  
   Drive Belts ..... 320  
   Malfunction Indicator  
     Lamp ..... 92, 370

Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 92, 368  
 Oil, What Kind to Use ..... 286  
 Overheating ..... 366  
 Specifications ..... 390  
 Starting ..... 247  
 Engine Coolant ..... 236, 290  
 Engine Number ..... 386  
 Exhaust Fumes ..... 79  
 Exterior, Cleaning the ..... 346

### F

Fabric, Cleaning ..... 350  
 Fan, Interior ..... 151, 157  
 Features, Comfort and  
   Convenience ..... 147  
 Filling the Fuel Tank ..... 231  
 Filters  
   Air Cleaner ..... 301  
   Dust and Pollen ..... 318  
   Fuel ..... 302  
   Oil ..... 287  
 Flashers, Hazard Warning ..... 106  
 Flat Tyre, Changing a ..... 355

CONTINUED





## Index

Floor Mats ..... 349

Fluids

- Automatic Transmission..... 289
- Brake..... 300
- Clutch..... 300
- Manual Transmission ..... 299
- Windscreen Washers..... 296

Folding Door Mirrors..... 139

Folding the Rear Seats..... 127

Four-way Flashers ..... 106

Front Airbags..... 12, 73

Front Fog Light ..... 107

Front and Rear Fog Lights..... 108

Fuel..... 230

- Cutoff System ..... 237
- Economy ..... 238
- Fill Door and Cap..... 231
- Filter ..... 302
- Gauge ..... 99
- Octane Requirement ..... 230
- Reserve Indicator..... 94
- Tank, Filling the..... 231

Fuel Cutoff System..... 237

Fuel Mileage..... 97

Fuses, Checking the..... 375

<b>G</b>	
Gauges .....	96
Fuel.....	99
Speedometer .....	96
Tachometer .....	96
Gearshift Lever Positions	
Automatic Transmission	
(CVT) .....	252
Manual Transmission .....	248
Glass Cleaning .....	351
Glove Box .....	123

<b>H</b>	
Halogen Headlight Bulbs.....	330
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	106
Headlights	
Adjuster .....	109
Aiming.....	330
High Beam Indicator .....	94
High Beams, Turning on .....	102
Low Beams, Turning on .....	102
Reminder Beeper.....	102
Replacing Halogen Bulbs .....	330
Turning on.....	102

Head Restraints .....	125
Heating and Cooling.....	148
High Altitude, Starting at.....	248
High-Low Beam Switch .....	102
High-mount Brake Light.....	341
Honda CVT + 7 Speed Mode	
7 Speed Mode Main	
Switch.....	255, 256
7-Speed Auto Shift Mode.....	255
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode.....	256
Shift Indicator .....	255, 256
Steering Shift Switches.....	256
Horn .....	3, 100
Hydraulic Clutch.....	300

<b>I</b>	
Identification Number, Vehicle....	386
If Your Vehicle Has to be	
Towed .....	381
Ignition	
Keys.....	110
Switch.....	113
Immobilizer System.....	112
Important Safety Precautions .....	8





## Index

Indicator Lights, Instrument Panel.....	86
Individual Map Lights .....	144
Infant Restraint .....	24
Infants Seats.....	39
Lower Anchorages .....	62
Tether Anchor Points .....	60
Inflation, Proper Tyre .....	321
Inside Mirror .....	137
Inspection, Tyre.....	322
Instrument Panel .....	86
Instrument Panel Brightness.....	103
Interior Cleaning.....	349
Interior Lights.....	144
Introduction.....	i

### J

Jacking up the Vehicle .....	355
Jack, Tyre .....	356
Jump Starting .....	363

### K

Keys.....	110
-----------	-----

### L

Lane Change, Signaling .....	103
Lap Belt.....	19, 68
Lap/Shoulder Belt.....	18, 66
Leather, Cleaning .....	350
Lighter, Cigarette .....	142
Lights	
Bulb Replacement .....	328
Indicator.....	86
Position .....	102
Turn Signal.....	103
Load Limit .....	242
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) ....	113
Locks	
Anti-theft Steering Column .....	113
Door, Childproof.....	121
Fuel Fill Door .....	231
Power Door Locks.....	115
Super Locking .....	116
Tailgate .....	121
Low Coolant Level.....	236
Low Fuel Indicator .....	94
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ....	92, 368
Lower Anchorages .....	62
Lower Gear, Downshifting to a....	249

Lubricant Specifications	
Chart .....	391, 392
Luggage .....	241
Luggage Area Light .....	145
Luggage Hooks.....	144

### M

Maintenance.....	277
Owner Maintenance Checks....	283
Record .....	282
Schedule .....	278-281
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	370
Manual Transmission.....	248
Checking Fluid Level.....	299
Shifting the .....	248
Manual Transmission Fluid .....	299
Maximum Allowable Speeds.....	250
Meters, Gauges.....	86, 96
Mirrors, Adjusting .....	137

### N

Neutral Gear Position.....	253
----------------------------	-----

CONTINUED







## Index

New Vehicle Break-in ..... 230  
 Normal Shift Speeds..... 249  
 NOTICE, Explanation of..... i  
 Numbers, Identification ..... 386

### O

Octane Requirement, Petrol..... 230  
 Odometer ..... 97  
 Oil  
   Change, How to ..... 287  
   Change, When to ..... 278  
   Checking Engine ..... 234  
   Pressure Indicator ..... 92, 368  
   Selecting Proper Viscosity  
     Chart ..... 286  
 ON (Ignition Key Position) ..... 113  
 Opening the Bonnet ..... 233  
 Opening the Tailgate..... 121  
 Outside Mirrors ..... 138  
 Outside Temperature Indicator ..... 98  
 Overheating, Engine ..... 366  
 Owner Maintenance Checks..... 283

### P

Paint Touch-up..... 348  
 Panel Brightness Control ..... 103  
 Park Gear Position..... 252  
 Parking ..... 259  
 Parking Brake ..... 141  
 Parking Brake and Brake  
   System Indicator..... 95, 371  
 Petrol..... 230  
   Filling the Fuel Tank..... 231  
   Filter ..... 302  
   Fuel Cutoff System..... 237  
   Fuel Economy ..... 238  
   Fuel Reserve Indicator..... 94  
   Gauge ..... 99  
   Octane Requirement ..... 230  
 PGM-FI System..... 395  
 Polishing and Waxing ..... 347  
 Position Lights ..... 102  
 Pre-Drive Safety Checklist ..... 14  
 Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts..... 22  
 Proper Seat Belt Usage ..... 18  
 Protecting Adults..... 15  
   Additional Safety Precautions.... 22  
   Advice for Pregnant Women..... 22

Protecting Children ..... 24  
 Protecting Infants..... 39  
 Protecting Larger Children..... 55  
 Protecting Small Children ..... 47  
 Using Child Restraints with  
   Tethers..... 60  
 Using Lower Anchorages..... 62

### R

Radiator Overheating..... 366  
 Rear Fog Light ..... 107  
 Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement... 335  
 Rear Seats, Folding..... 127  
 Rear View Mirror..... 137  
 Rear Window Demister ..... 106  
 Rear Window Wiper and  
   Washer ..... 105  
 Reclining the Seat Backs ..... 125  
 Recommended Shift Speeds ..... 249  
 Remote Transmitter ..... 117





## Index

Replacement Information	Head Restraints .....	14	Setting the Clock ...	173, 190, 207, 218
Air Cleaner Element.....	Seat Belts .....	10	Shift Lever Position Indicator .....	251
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	Seats & Seat-Backs.....	13	Shift Lock Release.....	258
Engine Coolant.....	Safety Labels, Location of .....	80	Side Airbags .....	12, 75
Engine Oil and Filter .....	Safety Messages .....	ii	Risks to Children .....	29
Fuel Filter .....	Seat Belts .....	10, 66	Signaling Turns .....	103
Fuses .....	Additional Information.....	66	Snow Tyres.....	326
Light Bulbs .....	Automatic Seat Belt		Solvent-type Cleaners.....	346
Schedule .....	Tensioners.....	69	Spare Tyre .....	355
Spark Plugs .....	Cleaning .....	350	Compact .....	354
Tyres .....	Lap Belt.....	19, 68	Spark Plugs, Replacing .....	303, 306
Wiper Blades .....	Lap/Shoulder Belt.....	18, 66	Specifications Charts.....	388
Replacing Seat Belts After a	Maintenance .....	70	Speedometer .....	96
Crash .....	Reminder Indicator and		Spotlights .....	144
Reserve Tank, Engine	Beeper .....	66, 91	SRS, Additional Information.....	73
Coolant .....	Replacement.....	70	Additional Safety Precautions....	78
Restraint, Child .....	System Components.....	66	Automatic Seat Belt	
Reverse Gear Position.....	Use During Pregnancy.....	22	Tensioners .....	69
Roof Antenna .....	Wearing a Lap/Shoulder		How the SRS Indicator Works... 76	
Rotation, Tyre .....	Belt .....	18, 66	How Your Front Airbags	
	Wearing the Lap Belt.....	19, 68	Work.....	73
<b>S</b>	Seats, Adjusting the.....	124	How Your Side Airbags Work....	75
Safety Belts.....	Segment Distance .....	97		
Safety Features .....	Service Intervals .....	278		
Airbags.....	Service Station Procedures .....	231		

CONTINUED





## Index

SRS, Additional Information	
SRS Components .....	73
SRS Service.....	77
SRS Indicator.....	76, 91
START (Ignition Key Position) ...	114
Starting the Engine.....	247
In Cold Weather at High	
Altitude .....	248
With a Dead Battery .....	363
Steam Coming from Engine .....	366
Steering Wheel	
Adjustment .....	109
Anti-theft Column Lock .....	113
Stereo Sound System .....	167
Storing Your Vehicle.....	342
Sunroof.....	136
Closing Manually .....	373
Operation .....	136
Super Locking .....	116
Supplemental Restraint	
System.....	12, 73
Servicing .....	77
SRS Indicator.....	76, 91
System Components.....	73

<b>T</b>	
Tachometer .....	96
Tailgate .....	121
Opening the .....	121
Tail-lights, Changing Bulbs in.....	335
Taking Care of the Unexpected ..	353
Technical Descriptions	
Emissions Control Systems.....	394
Three Way Catalytic	
Converter.....	396
Temperature Indicators.....	95
Tether Anchor Points.....	60
Three Way Catalytic	
Converter .....	396
Time, Setting the... 173, 190, 207, 218	
Tools, Tyre Changing .....	356
Tonneau Cover.....	132
Towing	
A Trailer.....	269
Emergency Wrecker .....	381
Front Towing Hook.....	383
Towbar Mounting Points.....	388
Transmission	
Checking Fluid Level,	
Automatic .....	297

Checking Fluid Level,	
Manual .....	299
Fluid Selection .....	298, 299
Identification Number.....	386
Shifting the Continuously	
Variable .....	251
Shifting the Manual.....	248
Treadwear .....	322
Trip Meter .....	97
Turn Signals .....	103
Tyre, How to Change a Flat .....	355
Tyres .....	321
Air Pressure .....	321
Balancing .....	323
Chains .....	326
Checking Wear .....	322
Compact Spare .....	354
Inflation .....	321
Inspection .....	322
Maintenance.....	323
Replacing .....	324
Rotating.....	323
Snow .....	326
Specifications .....	392
Winter .....	326





## Index

### U

Underside, Cleaning .....	352
Unexpected, Taking Care of the .....	353
Upholstery Cleaning.....	349
Used Oil, How to Dispose of .....	289

### V

Vehicle Capacity Load .....	242
Vehicle Dimensions.....	388
Vehicle Identification Number.....	386
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system .....	264
Activation indicator .....	264
System indicator .....	265
On/Off switch.....	265
Ventilation .....	152, 162
VIN .....	386, 387
Vinyl Cleaning .....	350
Viscosity, Oil.....	286

### W

WARNING, Explanation of .....	ii
-------------------------------	----

Warning Labels, Location of .....	80
Washers, Windscreen Checking the Fluid Level .....	296
Operation .....	105
Washing .....	346
Waxing and Polishing .....	347
Wheels Adjusting the Steering .....	109
Alignment and Balance .....	323
Cleaning Aluminium Alloys.....	348
Compact Spare.....	354
Wrench .....	357
Windows Auto Reverse .....	135
Cleaning .....	351
Operating the Power .....	134
Rear, Demister.....	106
Windscreen Cleaning .....	104
Defroster .....	154, 165
Washers.....	105
Winter Tyres .....	326
Wipers Changing Blades.....	314
Operation .....	104

Rear Window Wiper and Washer.....	105
Worn Tyres .....	322
Wrecker, Emergency Towing.....	381





07/09/12 10:03:42 32SAA650\_409



**406**





07/09/12 10:03:44 32SAA650\_410





07/09/12 10:03:46 32SAA650\_411



**408**





07/09/12 10:03:48 32SAA650\_412







07/09/12 10:03:50 32SAA650\_413



**410**

